This thesis is presented for the degree of Doctor of Philosophy in the University of Natal.
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

I am deeply indebted to the many individuals of the warm and generous Zulu people who have always so willingly helped me in my research over the past ten years. I cannot enumerate them all here, but I would like to record the following names:

Chief G.M. Ncchanabi of Mahlabathini
Mr. O.B.W. Cwaka of Mahlabathini
Mr. J.E.B. Mabuza of Nongoma
Mrs. A.G.T. Mhlabana of Nongoma
Mr. A.B. Ngcobo of Eshowe
Mrs. G.N. Khumalo of Durban
Mr. Isaac Kubeka of Ladysmith and Durban
Mr. Douglas Ekelo of Ladysmith and Durban

I am particularly grateful to my colleagues, Messrs. Mzolo and Kubeka for their interest and patient assistance during the past two years of writing this thesis.

I am also grateful to the Head of the Department of African Studies, Professor E.J. Krige, for the support she has always given me and for the tolerance with which she has viewed my distraction from departmental duties. The typists, Mrs. B. de Wit who typed the first draft of the manuscript, and Mrs. M. Foster-Storey who typed this thesis with determination and speed, both deserve medals. My wife's contribution, consolation in times of despair, encouragement in times of slackness, enthusiasm in times of success, and full cooperation, is such that this thesis is indeed a joint production.

Although I have been working in a vacuum of theoretical linguistics, I have been fortunate in the communications I have had with Professor E.O.J. West hall of Cape Town University, Professor D.T. Cole (Zulu Languages) and Professor L.M. Lehrman (General Linguistics) of Washington University, particularly the latter. Financially, I am indebted to the National Council of Social Research for the assistance of an MRC grant.

Durban
December, 1966

A.T. Cope
SYMBOLS

I use the conventional symbols for segmental phonemes, except /l/ instead of /b/ for the lenis implosive and /b/ instead of /bh/ for the fortis explosive, and /hh/ to represent the voiced glottal fricative which is phonemically distinct from the voiceless fricative /h/. In these instances I follow the old orthography, the return to which is greatly to be desired. I represent the syllabic nasal as /m/, so that "mb" becomes /mb/ or /mh/ or /mb/. Other symbols are as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
\{ \} & \text{encloses morphemes} \\
( ) & \text{encloses phones and tones} \\
/ / & \text{encloses phones and tonemes} \\
\sim & \text{indicates an alternative form} \\
* & \text{indicates a hypothetical form} \\
' & \text{represents vowel length} \\
> & \text{is the "to" sign} \\
< & \text{is the "from" sign} \\
\emptyset & \text{is the zero sign} \\
\text{represents a high tone} \\
\text{represents a low tone} \\
\text{represents a falling tone} \\
\text{represents a rising tone} \\
\text{represents a tonal downstep} \\
\text{represents a tonal upstep}
\end{align*}
\]

The tonemic status of these tones and tonal steps is determined in the text, in which further symbols are introduced.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chapter 1: INTRODUCTION</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.1 The Zulu Language</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.1 Variation due to dialect</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.2 Variation due to drift</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.1.3 Variation in style of speech</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2 Principles of Analysis</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.1 Structural levels</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.2 Structural symmetry</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.3 Phonemic overlapping</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.4 Methods of description</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.5 Necessity for flexibility</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.6 Distribution and identity</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.7 The field of morphophonemics</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2.8 New approaches</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>References</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Chapter 2: PHONOLOGY            | 17-51|
| 2.1 Historical Introduction     | 17   |
| 2.2 Phonemes                    | 17   |
| 2.2.1 The pattern of vowels     | 17   |
| 2.2.2 The pattern of consonants | 19   |
| 2.2.3 An alternative consonant pattern | 23 |
| 2.3 Phoneme Clusters            | 26   |
| 2.4 Morphophonology             | 27   |
| 2.5 Suprasegmental Phonemes     | 29   |
| 2.5.1 Length                    | 31   |
| 2.5.1.1 Inherent length         | 31   |
| 2.5.1.2 Imposed length          | 36   |
| 2.5.2 Stress                    | 39   |
| 2.5.2.1 Primary stress          | 39   |
| 2.5.2.2 Secondary stress        | 43   |
| 2.5.3 Intonation                | 45   |
| 2.5.4 Juncture                  | 48   |
| 2.5.5 Transition                | 50   |
| References                      | 51   |
Chapter 3: **TONOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.1</td>
<td>Historical Introduction</td>
<td>52</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>Tonemes</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1</td>
<td>The intonational segment</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2</td>
<td>Phonetic environment</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.1</td>
<td>Tonal steps</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.1.1</td>
<td>Tonal downsteps</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.1.2</td>
<td>Tonal upsteps</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2.2</td>
<td>Final cadence</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3</td>
<td>Consonantal influence</td>
<td>62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.1</td>
<td>Tonal glides</td>
<td>64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4</td>
<td>Tonemes</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.1</td>
<td>Differentiating tonemes</td>
<td>71</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.4.2</td>
<td>Demarcating tonemes</td>
<td>72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.5</td>
<td>An alternative interpretation</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>Toneme Clusters</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1</td>
<td>The HHH toneme cluster</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2</td>
<td>The LHH toneme cluster</td>
<td>77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>Morphotono1ogy</td>
<td>78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.1</td>
<td>Tonal assimilation</td>
<td>79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.2</td>
<td>Tonal dissimilation</td>
<td>84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.4.3</td>
<td>Tonal displacement</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5</td>
<td>Suprasegmental Phonemes</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.1</td>
<td>Tone and Length</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.2</td>
<td>Tone and Stress</td>
<td>87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.3</td>
<td>Tone and Intonation</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.4</td>
<td>Tone and Juncture</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.5.5</td>
<td>Tone and Transition</td>
<td>88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>References</td>
<td>89</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 4: **OUTLINE OF ZULU GRAMMATICAL STRUCTURE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>The trinitite basis</td>
<td>91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>Morphology</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.0</td>
<td>Morphemes</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.1</td>
<td>Morphological classes</td>
<td>93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.2</td>
<td>Grammatical agreement</td>
<td>94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.3</td>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Chapter 4: (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4.3.3.1</td>
<td>Nominal inflection</td>
<td>98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.3.2</td>
<td>Verbal inflection</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.4</td>
<td>Derivation</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.4.1</td>
<td>Nominal derivation</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.4.2</td>
<td>Verbal derivation</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.3.5</td>
<td>Nomino-verbal constructions</td>
<td>107</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.4</td>
<td>Morphophonology</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>Syntax</td>
<td>109</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Chapter 5: TONAL GRAMMAR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>Historical Introduction</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.2</td>
<td>The tripartite basis</td>
<td>116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3</td>
<td>Tonal Morphology</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0</td>
<td>Tonal Morphemes</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0.1</td>
<td>The final tonal morpheme (FTM)</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0.2</td>
<td>The initial tonal morpheme (ITM)</td>
<td>119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0.3</td>
<td>The medial tonal morpheme (MTM)</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0.4</td>
<td>Contraction of tonal morphemes</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.0.5</td>
<td>Expansion of tonal morphemes</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1</td>
<td>Tonomorphological classes</td>
<td>122</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1.1</td>
<td>Nominal tone classes or declensions</td>
<td>123</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.1.2</td>
<td>Verbal tone classes or conjugations</td>
<td>128</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.2</td>
<td>Grammatical agreement</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3</td>
<td>Inflection</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1</td>
<td>Nominal inflection</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1.1</td>
<td>Nouns</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1.2</td>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1.3</td>
<td>Pronouns</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1.4</td>
<td>Demonstratives</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.1.5</td>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2</td>
<td>Verbal inflection</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2.1</td>
<td>Infinitive mood</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2.2</td>
<td>Imperative mood</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2.3</td>
<td>Indicative mood</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2.4</td>
<td>Subjunctive mood</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.3.2.5</td>
<td>Potential mood</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4</td>
<td>Derivation</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4.1</td>
<td>Nominal derivation</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.4.2</td>
<td>Verbal derivation</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 5: (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5.3.5</td>
<td>Nomino-verbal constructions</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.5.1</td>
<td>Copulative constructions</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.3.5.2</td>
<td>Relative constructions</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.</td>
<td>Morphotonology</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.1</td>
<td>The FTM</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.2</td>
<td>Penultimate length</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.3</td>
<td>Depressor consonants</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.4</td>
<td>The tonal upstep</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.5</td>
<td>Object concords</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.6</td>
<td>Third person subject concords</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.7</td>
<td>Subject concords</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.8</td>
<td>Implication prefixes</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.4.9</td>
<td>Other conditioning factors</td>
<td>193</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.5</td>
<td>Tonal Syntax</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>References</td>
<td>196</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 6: APPENDIX A

Summary of nominal tone classes and declensions

Page 198-204

Chapter 7: APPENDIX B

Summary of verbal tone classes and conjugations

Page 205-226
CHAPTER 1

INTRODUCTION

1.1. The Zulu Language

Zulu belongs to the Nguni group of the Southern Bantu languages, which are spoken throughout Southern Africa. Other groups are the Suthu and the Shona, which are spoken in the interior, whereas the Nguni languages are spoken towards the south-east coast, Xhosa in the eastern part of the Cape Province, Zulu in Natal and Zululand, and Swazi in Swaziland. Swazi represents a distinct variety of Nguni speech known as "tekela", characterized by t in place of Zulu and Xhosa z, ts or tf and dz or dv in place of Zulu and Xhosa t and d, and by other phonetical characteristics, but Zulu and Xhosa are so similar that they are linguistically dialects of the same language. However, they have important separate literatures and are generally regarded as separate languages. For these reasons and for the more real reason that it is in tonal structure that they differ most greatly, this study excludes Xhosa and concentrates on Zulu only.

Zulu is spoken by two to three million speakers mostly living in Natal and Zululand. Its phonetical characteristics include the clicks, presumably borrowed from the Khoisan languages whose speakers were swept further and further south by the advancing Nguni migrations. Its grammatical characteristics include disyllabic noun prefixes (e.g. afa-, ili-, ama-), which seem to insulate the stem from the effects of tonal context to which it is often subject in languages having monosyllabic noun prefixes (e.g. 6a-, li-, ma-). In Venda, for instance, Westphal reports that the tones of nouns vary considerably in different tonal contexts and sets out these variations according to whether a low tone or a high tone precedes, but in Zulu, although the prefix may be so affected, the stem is not. Even on prefixal inflection the stem is not affected; it is only the stems of nouns whose prefixes consist of single syllables that are subject to tonal change, i.e. noun class 9. A further consequence of the fact that most words begin as well as end in vowels is the elision of final vowels in normal speech, which contributes greatly to the legato quality of the language. Another contributing factor is final cadence: the drawing out of the penultimate vowel at the ends of sentences together with the drawing down of tone.
1.1.1. Variation due to dialect

Zulu, because of its past history as the language of a nation formed from all the tribes of Natal and Zululand, is a remarkably uniform language. Variation due to dialect does exist, but it is nowhere near as great as in Great Britain. All Zulus can understand one another, which is not true of all Britons. Since the turn of the century, there has been a shift in the centre of interest from Zululand to Natal, due to the greater opportunities to be found there. Natal is the melting pot and the source of development for all aspects of Zulu life, including the linguistic aspect. This study therefore takes the Natal dialect as its standard, rather than the Zululand dialect described by Doke in his standard works, the Grammar and the Dictionary. Not only is it the most widespread in area, but it is the language of the town and of the educated middle-class generally; it is therefore destined to oust the Zululand dialect as the standard literary language. The acceptance in literature of the absolute pronoun /kənə/ instead of /khənə/ (as in Doke's Grammar and Dictionary)\(^1\) and of the demonstratives /ləkə/ and /ləkə/ instead of /ləkə/ and /ləkə/, shows that Natal usage is gaining on Zululand usage. However, the standard Natal dialect represents the Zululand dialect very nearly, owing to the remarkable linguistic unity of the language.

This study excludes the extremities because of their linguistic peculiarities: the coastal strip (an old Lala-Nguni area), the extreme north (an old Swazi-Nguni area), and the extreme south (a Baca-Nguni area even today and furthermore subject to Xhosa influence). These are historically "tekela" areas, but this type of Nguni speech was submerged by the rise of the Zulu nation\(^4\). It is best represented today in Swaziland, and it is still spoken by the Bacaas of the Cape Province and to a lesser and lesser extent by the Bacaas of Southern Natal. These people were originally refugees from the old Swazi-Nguni area. Lala-Nguni, an extreme variety of "tekela" speech supposedly due to Tonga influence, is today virtually extinct. However, the coastal strip has certain peculiarities due to this influence, and it is impossible to avoid them altogether because they are evident in Durban. Although I point to dialect divergences from time to time in this study, I did not deliberately look for them. A study of Zulu dialects is a study in itself\(^11\).

\(^1\) It is thus distinct in writing as in speech from the adverb /khənə/ (there).

\(^4\) Mr. I.S. Kubeka, B.A.Hons. (Natal), is at present engaged in this study. He has kindly read this section and agrees with its points.
1.1.2. Variation due to drift

All languages drift towards the accomplishment of linguistic change. Linguistic drift has direction, as Sapir points out, and the acceptance of variation leads to definite ends. Zulu is drifting towards monosyllabic noun prefixes: VCV > VV (long or double vowel) > V (single vowel), or VCV > VOC (double or syllabic consonant) > VC (consonant cluster with the first consonant of the stem).

Noun prefixes /ili, ulu/ are already /i:, u:/, and /izi, iziN/ are most often /i:, i:N/ in normal speech. Noun prefix /umu/ is already /um/, and /imi/ is most often /im/ in normal speech. There are also the alternatives /um, im/ if the resultant cluster is a possibility, e.g. /lám'fânh/ (boy), /lm'fânh/ (vegetables), which points to the development of the homorganic nasal: */ini > *in > iN/ (noun class 9 prefix). Noun prefix /imi/ is often /i/ giving a new syllabic consonant and sometimes /in/ giving a new set of consonant clusters, e.g. /isclamation/ (time), and especially the borrowed words, /is'pamâh/ (spoon), /is'teshâh/ (station), /is'k̡eâh/ (school). Here the stems are subject to tonal change on prefixal inflection in the same way as stems in noun class 9 and for the same reason: the prefix consists of a single syllable. Similarly stems in noun classes 5 and 11 are subject to tonal change when the prefixes /i:, ui/ occur as /i, u/. The last stage is not accepted, however, and such instances are rejected as mistakes. Common mistakes are significant in indicating the direction of drift.

What does the linguist accept as change and what does he reject as error? He must stop the flux of drift according to his own judgement and describe the situation at that point as if it were static. The Zulu "perfect tense" is problematical in this respect. The end of the drift seems to be the positive form as the perfect aspect of the present tense and the negative form as the past tense, and I have interpreted the situation accordingly by describing /slthengile/ as the positive present perfect tense and /slthengile/ as the negative past tense. However, these forms retain "perfect tense" characteristics in certain respects. Furthermore the negative present perfect tense /slthengile/ is not yet firmly established. The situation is complicated by the "stative verbs", which I would define as verbs having a special perfect stem side by side with a regular perfect stem, e.g. /lala/ (lie down) has /lele/ side by side with /lalile/.

---

1 N represents the homorganic nasal:
N + ph > mp, N + th > nt, N + kh > nk.

11 The infinitive or verbal noun prefix /uku/ also occurs as /uk/, e.g. /Dedi'thengâ ~ 6k'thengâ/ (to buy).
the former referring to perfect state in present time and the latter to recent past action. With nonstative verbs the perfect stem indicates both these meanings according to context.

Further examples of drift situations are as follows:

(a) There is a tendency for verbs of tone conjugation II to follow the pattern of verbs of tone conjugation I. The end of the drift is a single tone conjugation. Although the end is far from accomplished, some forms show no conjugational contrast and others show a contrast with disyllabic stem verbs only.

(b) The high-to-low falling tone which occurs with its concomitant of vowel length as the inherent tone of certain affixes, tends to be replaced by a high level tone, and, less commonly, vowel length tends to disappear, e.g. /wałhamba > wá: hamba > wá:hamba/ (he went), of which I would accept /wá: hamba/ and reject /wá:hamba/.

(c) The feature of vowel length clearly shows itself to be in a state of drift\(^1\). The evidence suggests that it arises as a result of contraction, e.g. noun prefixes /ilu, uulu > i:, u:/, perfect suffix /ile > e:/, and then tends to disappear. When it occurs in the final syllable of a word, the word has final stress and no penultimate stress, and when it disappears, the word still has final stress and no penultimate stress\(^{11}\). I therefore mark final length even though it may be latent in itself, as in the nonfinal form of the present perfect tense, e.g. /bá: bá:mí:/ (they have been, with final stress, with or without final length)\(^{111}\), and as with the inflectional allomorphs of the monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs e.g. /ná: l/: (to this one, with final stress, without final length in the standard dialect).

(d) There is a similar situation with regard to rising tones: just as final stress conditioned by final length can occur

---

\(^{1}\) I refer to vowel length inherent in certain affixes, not to "penultimate length".

\(^{11}\) See 2.5.2. for the interrelationship between length and stress.

\(^{111}\) Beuchat\(^6\) omits to mention final length or stress as a constituent of this form, but /bá: bá:mí/ (without final length or stress) does not occur in the careful speech which I describe.
without the conditioning factor, so can rising tones
conditioned by depressor consonants\(^1\). The situation
arises in the nominal extra prefixes. In the case of
the instrumentive prefix \{nga\}, the consonant is realized
as either depressor (ng) or depressor (\(\text{n}\)) or nondepressor
(\(\eta\)). Rising tones occur with all three variants, which
I attribute to the influence of /ng/ whose "heavy voice"
quality is sometimes latent. In the case of the conjunc-
tive prefix \{nha\} the consonant is realized as either
nondepressor (n) or depressor (nh), and I attribute rising
tones to the influence of /nh/ whose "heavy voice" quality
is sometimes or often latent. The possible evolution of
this prefix is/*nha*//nh\(\text{h}\)/ (depressor consonant causes
rising tone) \(\text{>h}\)/ (rising tone renders depressor consonant
redundant as a signal). The emergence of the rising tone
as a signal in itself is best illustrated by agentive nouns:
/\text{indbda}/ (a man) > /\text{hindbda}/ (by a man), which I interpret
as /\text{hhindbda}/. The depressor consonant /\text{hh}/ occurs commonly,
but its "heavy voice" quality is often latent in the nominal
extra prefixes.

\(\text{(e) There is evidence to suggest that the tonal system itself}
\text{has drifted from a system of inherent tone operating}
\text{primarily lexically towards a system of imposed tone}
\text{operating primarily grammatically, probably as a result}
\text{of the tonal changes consequent upon the juxtaposition of}
\text{inherent tones. Here the end of the drift is almost com-
pletely accomplished, and I interpret in terms of the new}
\text{system.}\)

\[1.1.3\]. Variation in style of speech

This study limits the field in space as to dialect and in time
as to drift; it also limits it as to style of speech. My analysis
is based on careful speech, in which the maximum number of linguistic
distinctions is made. In normal speech some of these distinctions
disappear, particularly tonal distinctions, and in quick or careless
speech there is general levelling and distortion. In slow speech

\(\text{1 Consonants with "heavy voice" quality such as /h, d, s, v, z/.}\)
there is distortion again, and again it is the tonal aspect that
is most affected. There is naturally no clear-cut dividing line
between styles of speech, just as there is no dividing line in
matters of dialect and drift.

1.2. Principles of Analysis

This study is essentially a description of Zulu phonology,
tonology and tonal grammar. It is not an essay in the principles
of linguistic analysis as applied to the Zulu language, nor a
ferreting out of the difficulties that try these principles to
the uttermost. I follow these principles as far as possible, which
is as far as there is no distortion of the facts. Here I set out
my attitude towards particular principles.

1.2.1. Structural levels

The concept of structural levels is indispensable to linguistic
analysis, but not the principle that prohibits the interpretation of
facts at one level in the light of facts at another. This is a good
guide but not an inflexible rule.

Lanham in his study of Nguni phonology7 sets out to apply the
conventional methodology of structural linguistics to his subject,
but in order to present an analysis that is acceptable to himself as
a speaker of the language, he is forced to go against the principle
that prohibits the mixing of structural levels and interpret vowel
length in terms of its grammatical function. Vowel length functions
both morphologically and syntactically in Nguni languages, an incon­
trovertible fact which leads him to review "the relevance of grammatic
environment in phonologic analysis" (p.9 - 13) and finally to adopt
"unorthodox procedures in analyzing vowel length" (p.146 - 160).
He devotes almost a third of his study to this subject together with
the related subject of juncture, for it raises "the gravest doubts
regarding the full validity of the principle forbidding level­
mixing in phonologic analysis" (p12 -13), and leads to the con­
clusion that the principle is only partially valid, a conclusion
of universal significance.
Linguistic principles are not permanent. The question of the mixing of levels in linguistic analysis and in particular the relevance of grammar in phonological analysis, has now shifted from a position of prohibition on principle to a position of doubt. Pike has two articles on the subject of "grammatical prerequisites to phonemic analysis" and Lyons in an article entitled "Phonemic and nonphonemic phonology" expresses doubt as to the desirability and even as to the possibility of carrying out phonological analysis independently of grammatical analysis. He is influenced by the prosodic phonology of Firth, which sees no objection to the mixing of levels. Firth was one of the first linguists to perfect the concept of structural levels. He sets up a "hierarchy of levels" as a convenient construct for the analysis of meaning, but in his study of prosodies he prefers not to be bound by this construct and deliberately blurs the outlines of phonology and morphology in the interests of synthesis. Furthermore there is no one and only one interpretation of the facts. Here again the influence of Firth is apparent. He regards linguistic entities such as phonemes and morphemes, phonological and morphological levels, morphology and syntax, as abstractions having no absolute reality: "the systematics of phonology and grammar are ordered schematic constructs, frames of reference, a sort of scaffolding for the handling of linguistic events. Even the "hierarchy of levels" is simply a schematic construct. Therefore the interpretation depends upon the frame of reference; it is the product and not the discovery of the linguist.

1.2.2. Structural symmetry

The concept of structural symmetry is also indispensable to linguistic analysis, but not the principle that determines the interpretation of all linguistic facts according to a pattern. Again this is a good guide but not an inflexible rule.

It was Sapir who first stressed the importance of pattern in phonology. Gleason's text book, reflecting the analyses of Bloch and Trager and Trager and Smith, presents the pattern of English phonology in its clear-cut structural symmetry, which is a revelation after the confusion of phonetic charts. This pattern represents the systemization that phonology imposes on phonetics. Lanham sets up the phonological patterns of the Nguni languages, but here the patterns are not so clear-cut owing to the consonantal

---

1 I attended Firth's lectures on general linguistics at the University of London in 1951-52.
complexity of these languages. There are a number of "leftovers" according to a concept of "peripheral contrasts" (p.13-16), not only in that they do not fit the pattern but also in that they carry a low functional load. An example from Zulu phonology is the sound (ts), which is normally nondistinctive but nevertheless distinctive in a few words. Such sounds are rare, owing to the compulsion of phonological patterns. Exceptions are far more common in morphology, and they must be admitted as such. To force them into the pattern of regular forms is to distort the facts.

Hill is very much concerned with symmetry in his study of English structure, but he goes too far in at least one instance. He interprets the personal pronouns of English, which are notoriously irregular, according to a structurally symmetrical pattern. He admits that the results of his technical ingenuity have little practical application (p.148), but he is guilty of a fundamental fault. When Hockett, like Hill, tries to show that the personal pronouns represent a regular paradigm, Nida accuses him of misrepresentation in order to give a false impression of structural simplicity. Firth writes, "We must separate from the mush of general goings-on those features of repeated events which appear to be parts of a patterned process, and handle them systematically by stating them by the spectrum of linguistic techniques." Here he states that there is a pattern and implies that there are exceptions to it; to force the exceptions into the pattern is misrepresentation.

1.2.3. Phonemic overlapping

The principle that prohibits the overlapping of phonemes in phonological analysis was first formulated by Bloch and later installed as a postulate. It is now so firmly established that I hardly dare to question it, but the facts of Zulu phonology force me to do so. Again I would say that this is a good guide but not an inflexible rule.

The case of the sound (ts) is an example; it is normally nondistinctive and therefore nonphonemic but in a few words it is distinctive and therefore phonemic. Another example is the sound (r). According to the rule, "once phonemic always phonemic", all occurrences of this sound must be treated as phonemic. But is it commonsense to encumber morphology with the allomorphs /iloliwe~iroliwe~iRorive/ for "railway", and /iloli~ilori~iRori/ for "lorry", for the sake of avoiding the overlap in phonology of the phoneme /l/ in its (r) allophone with the phoneme /r/ as it occurs only in the ideophone /prR/ imitating the sound of birds flying?
These cases lead Lanham "to doubt seriously whether the very occasional distinctiveness of a phone is evidence of its distinctiveness everywhere" and "to prefer to believe that distinctiveness is a relative matter" (p.16). In his analysis, however, he nevertheless observes the rules of conventional methodology. He gives no indication of how he treats (r), but he treats (ts) as distinctive everywhere. I prefer to admit phonemic overlapping in these cases. In justification - if justification is needed, for I do not regard linguistic principles as absolutely binding - there is Hill²⁵, who states that "some phonemic overlapping of identical sounds must be admitted" and stresses "the priority of the criterion of distribution (in phonemic analysis) over phonetic identity" (p.52). It is distribution which shows (ts) to be an allophone of /s/, an allophone phonetically identical to the leftover phoneme /ts/.

The case of the sound (tsh) is similar but significantly different. Just as (ts) is a variant of /s/ conditioned by the nasal compound environment, so (tsh) is a variant of /sh/, but it differs in that it has a high functional load. I would not admit phonemic overlapping in this case; the criterion of functional load separates /tsh/ on the one hand from the "leftovers" /ts/ and /r/ on the other. Thus I would write (ingu6o entsha ensundu) (a new brown blanket) as /ingu6o entsha ensundu/, regarding /N + sh > ntsh/ as a change of phoneme and /N + s > ns (nts)/ as a change of allophone. In this respect I concur with the current orthography.

Although phonological analysis rejects phonemic overlapping with segmental phonemes, it tacitly accepts it with suprasegmental phonemes. All analysts of the pitch feature point to the fact that low tones in some contexts are as high as high tones in others. Context has, therefore, to be taken into consideration before tones can be attributed to tonal phonemes, in the same way as I would take context into consideration before attributing (ts) to either of the phonemes /s/ or /ts/. The overlapping of morphemes is accepted as an incontrovertible fact in morphological analysis. Hockett goes as far as to say that /biyt/ representing /beat/ and /biyt/ representing /beet/ are the same morph, but he confirms that they are allomorphs of two different morphemes²⁶.

1.2.4. Methods of description

I do not follow exclusively either the IA (item and arrangement) method or the IP (item and process) method, but both...
to circumstance. I also incline to the oldfashioned WP (word and paradigm) approach whose characteristics Robins gives as the word as the fundamental unit in grammar and the basic division between morphology and syntax, for, although the morpheme is recognised as the minimal grammatical unit, "the word remains the unit of grammatical description because of its paradigmatic and syntagmatic associations". The IA "school" has the benefit of Bloomfield and a long line of followers who have devoted themselves to the perfection of linguistic techniques. On the other hand the IP approach has the benefit of Sapir with his wide vision and deep insight. The IA "school" has developed a formidable body of theory which provides rigid rules for the analyst, but intuition still plays its part and the analyst ought to take care that the application of rigid rules is not to the detriment of intuition and indeed of commonsense. A pertinent comment of Nida's comes to mind: "Commonsense reacts to this kind of analysis". He refers to Bloch's logical but ridiculous conclusion that /hev, hav, xv, y/ are not allomorphs of the morpheme /have/ but different morphemes. The IA method of description predisposes the analyst to interpret in terms of affixation, which has resulted in some extraordinary statements of morphological inflection in cases where it operates by internal modification rather than by external affixation. It is not surprising that Hill protests against the proliferation of zero affixes. Nida shows a swing from IP to IA from the 1946 to the 1949 editions of his excellent text-book on morphology, but, although his techniques are IA, his general approach is still IP, which mellows the rigidity of the IA approach. I try to emulate this sensible linguist.

1.2.5. Necessity for flexibility

There is thus a need for flexibility in the application of rules to human behaviour in the field of language. Lanham is aware of the conflict between the facts of linguistic behaviour and the rules of linguistic science at several points in his study. The question of vowel length has already been mentioned, where, in order to present a satisfactory interpretation, he has to set aside the principle prohibiting the mixing of levels in linguistic analysis (see 1.2.1. Structural levels). The question of "peripheral contrasts" has also been mentioned, where he sets up phonemes of low functional load that do not fit the pattern as "leftovers" (see 1.2.2. Structural symmetry). Consideration of "peripheral contrasts" leads him to observe that "the line between distinctive and nondistinctive is not so easily or readily drawn as is sometimes supposed" (p.16), which
leads me to admit phonemic overlapping in the case of "leftovers" (see 1.2.3. Phonemic overlapping). Lanham concludes that "the analysis of language as a pattern of human behaviour requires more flexibility and less mechanical rigidity in methodology" (p.40), with which I fully concur. I suggest native-speaker reaction, the catalyst to all the conflicts that Lanham comes across, as the safeguard against overrigidity.

It is in the field of morphemics (the identification and description of morphemes) that the application of rigid rules has had its most extreme results. Harries best represents the progress of the strict linguistic scientist through his series of articles to his "Methods in Structural Linguistics". It is necessary that professional linguists should press principles to extremes, for it is only thus that the science advances. It is noteworthy, however, that Hockett in his textbook leaves aside the extremes of his articles in professional journals and adopts a position close to Nida, always the eminently sensible linguist. Hockett writes, "Grammatical analysis is still to a surprising extent an art: the best and clearest descriptions of languages are achieved not by investigators who follow some rigid set of rules, but by those who have developed a flair for it" (p.147). He expresses my own opinion.

1.2.6. Distribution and identity

Harries claims to be able to identify morphemes on the grounds of distributional relationship alone, excluding meaning absolutely from linguistic analysis. Hauge reacts to the "rigor" Harries considers so desirable when he writes, "The minimizing of meaning, ... at first a healthy reaction against the misuse of meaning in establishing linguistic categories, has now become almost a fetish". Language is a symbolic system linking sound and meaning, so that in all descriptions of it there must be both phonetic and semantic identification. Chafe gives this view of language: language selects on the one hand from the phonetic continuum and arranges (phonology) and on the other hand from the "incomparably more complex" semantic continuum and arranges (grammar), and the link between these two independent arrangements is morphophonemics. Distributional analysis is not sufficient in itself; it must go hand in hand with phonetic and semantic identification. Although, as Hauge rightly stresses, "distribution is the key to phonemics as distinct from phonetics and to morphemics as distinct from semantics" - witness the universal use of the technique of substitution in linguistic analysis - there is
also the criterion of identity, phonetic for phonemes and semantic for morphemes. A phoneme represents a class of non-contrastive and phonetically similar phones and a morpheme represents a class of non-contrastive and semantically similar morphs. The elimination of the criterion of semantic identity in the determination of morphemes is unacceptable, and I would follow Nida who (like Bloomfield) regards the morpheme as a phonetic-semantic unit, and Gleason's textbook which insists on the "double criterion" of distribution and identity.

This particular point is of little relevance to the study of tonology and tonomorphology, for tonemes do not have the phonetic identity of phonemes and tonomorphemes do not have the semantic identity of morphemes. The question of the phonetic identity of tonemes has been considered in detail by Schachter, but it is still the contrast between tones in specific contexts that is the significant factor. Pike's observation is still valid: "it is the relative height of the tonemes, not the actual pitch, that is pertinent to linguistic analysis." As to tonal morphemes, Hill observes that whereas segmental morphemes have semantic identity, suprasegmental morphemes (principally pitch and stress morphemes) do not. Therefore they have to be identified by distributional analysis alone.

1.2.7. The field of morphophonemics

I see morphophonemics as an area between linguistic levels rather than as a level in itself, with its own constructs corresponding to the constructs of the phoneme on the phonological level and the morpheme on the morphological level. I do not talk in terms of the morphophoneme therefore, but in terms of morphophonemic variation. The realizations of morphemes are determined by the interrelationship between phonology and morphology in the field of morphophonemics: morphophonemics concerns the phonemic representation of morphemes. Hockett writes that we can regard morphemes as composed of morphophones represented by phonemes; or we can regard morphemes as represented by morphs composed of phonemes. I prefer the latter concept because it reduces the abstractions between the morph and the phone from three to two, the morpheme and the phoneme. Hockett conceives of morphophonemics as a stratum intervening between the strata of phonology and morphology, whereas to me it is the field of interrelationship between the strata of phonology and morphology.

It seems that most Bantu languages operate on a basis of inherent tone, and here the concept of the morphotoneme is perhaps useful.
In his tonal analysis of the Tonga verb, Meussen distinguishes between "determinant syllables" and "neutral syllables" and describes the tonal system in terms of the representations brought about by the "determinant syllables". The tonal system of Sukuma as described by Richardson is similar. He attributes "tonal distinctiveness" to all syllables but tonally neutral syllables and describes the tonal system in terms of the realizations of "tonal distinctiveness". Here there is no need to set up tonal morphemes: the pattern of morphotonology is the complete statement. The tonal system of Zulu, however, is best described in terms of tonal grammar, with morphotonemics as the field of interrelationship between tonology and tonomorphology.

1.2.8. New approaches

Two fields of development in linguistic science have not been applied to the subject of this study: prosodic analysis and transformational analysis. Both these approaches are still at the experimental stage.

Prosodic analysis was first postulated by Robins. Robins defines it as "a phonological analysis taking account not only of paradigmatic relations but also of syntagmatic relations", for it is concerned with the synthesis between "phonemic units" brought about by "prosodies" not only of stress and pitch but also of palatalization, velarization, retroflexion, &c. Prosodic analysis has been applied to several languages by the linguists of the London School of Oriental and African Studies, but it is only now beginning to attract the attention of American linguists. Hill tries to correlate the phonemic and the prosodic approaches. The drawback of prosodic analysis is that it runs counter to the western way of writing, which is based on phonemic analysis. Although it reduces the number of symbols for segmental elements, it necessitates the invention of symbols for palatalization, velarization, voicing of consonants, rounding of vowels, &c., depending upon the prosodies of the language.

Transformational analysis results from the attempts to bring the study of syntax under the same sort of discipline as controls the analysis of phonology and morphology. Chomsky's "Syntactic Structures" has given rise to a host of articles in professional linguistic journals since 1960. However, the tonal system of Zulu operates almost completely at the levels of phonology and morphology.
REFERENCES

1. Westphal
   Venda tonal structure and intonation.
   (p.58-69). This study continues in

2. Doke
   A Textbook of Zulu Grammar. 1927.

3. Doke and Vilakazi
   Zulu-English Dictionary. 1948.
   (Latest edition 1953).

4. Bryant
   Zulu-English Dictionary. 1905. Introduction:
   The Origin of the Zulu People.

5. Sapir
   Language. 1921. Chapter VIII:
   Linguistic Drift.

6. Sapir
   Language. 1921. Chapter VIII:
   Linguistic Drift.

7. Lanham
   The Comparative Phonology of Nguni. 1960.

8. Pike
   Grammatical Prerequisites to Phonemic
   Analysis. Word. Vols.3 (1949) and 8 (1952).

9. Lyons
   Phonemic and Nonphonemic Phonology, I.J.A.L.

10. Firth
    Sounds and Prosodies. Transactions of the
    Philological Society. 1948.

11. Firth

12. Firth
    Personality and Language. The Sociological
    Review. 1950.

13. Sapir
    Sound Patterns in Language. Language.
    Vol.1. 1925.

14. Gleason
    Introduction to Descriptive Linguistics.

15. Bloch and Trager
    An Outline of Linguistic Analysis. 1942.

16. Trager and Smith

17. Lanham
    Comparative Nguni Phonology (op.cit.),
    Chapter 5.

18. Hill
    Introduction to Linguistic Structures.
    1958.

19. Hockett
    Problems of Morphemic Analysis. Language.

20. Nida
    The Identification of Morphemes. Language.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>Reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>Lanham</td>
<td>Comparative Nguni Phonology.</td>
<td>(op.cit.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>Hill</td>
<td>Introduction.</td>
<td>(op. cit.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30.</td>
<td>Bloomfield</td>
<td>Language.</td>
<td>1933.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31.</td>
<td>Sapir</td>
<td>Language.</td>
<td>1921.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36.</td>
<td>Lanham</td>
<td>Comparative Nguni Phonology.</td>
<td>(op. cit.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40.</td>
<td>Harries</td>
<td>Methods.</td>
<td>(op. cit.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43.</td>
<td>Gleason</td>
<td>Introduction.</td>
<td>(op. cit.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45.</td>
<td>Pike</td>
<td>Tone Languages.</td>
<td>1948. Preface.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Author</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Source</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>----------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49.</td>
<td>Richardson</td>
<td>The Role of Tone in Sukuma. 1959.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
2.1. Historical Introduction

The first detailed description of Zulu phonology was presented in Doke's "Phonetics of the Zulu Language". As the title states, the main interest is the exact phonetic nature of the sounds, but Doke does indicate the vowel and consonant phonemes of the language, the relationship between length and stress, and, under the heading of "Phonetics in Relation to Morphology", the morphophonemic changes that take place when morphology brings together phonemes that cannot cluster. The most up-to-date study of Zulu phonology is contained in Lanham's "Comparative Nguni Phonology". Lanham applies the principles of structural linguistics to Nguni phonology and discusses in detail the several problems that arise. He sets up for the individual languages the phonological patterns of the segmental phonemes on the basis of contrasting distinctive features or "phonologic components". He here applies the theory derived from Bloomfield and developed by Jakobson, that phonemes are bundles of distinctive features each of which represents a pole of a duality of contrasts, e.g. front/lateral, fortis/lenis, with or without voice, &c. This view does not invalidate the conventional view of the phoneme as a class of sounds. I have adopted Lanham's phonological patterns here in general, but departed from them in the particular instances to which attention is drawn below. Lanham also treats in detail the suprasegmental feature of vowel length, not only because it raises problems of linguistic analysis but also because it was previously the most neglected aspect of Zulu phonology.

2.2. Phonemes

2.2.1. The pattern of vowels is as follows:

```
  back
   \  /\
  u-\ /\e
 \ / \ /\a
low
```

```
Note:

(a) The headings front-back and high - mid - low refer to the positions of the tongue, so that the phonetic description of vowels is according to tongue position: /i/ is the high front vowel, /u/ is the high back vowel, /a/ is the low vowel. The high - mid - low tongue position corresponds to the close - mid - open mouth position, so that the high vowels may also be described as close and the low vowel as open.

(b) I depart from Lanham's pattern only in regarding e and e as allophones of the mid-front vowel and o and o as allophones of the mid-back vowel, instead of as phonemes in themselves. Lanham himself is not satisfied with his description, but a "pledged adherence to current methodological principles .... overrides a firm conviction that phonologic reality as observed in the reaction of informants, takes the form of only a front-back contrast (and not also a high-low contrast) between mid vowels" (p.39). The open allophone is the norm, the close allophone being conditioned by a close vowel in the following syllable or by /e/ which is demonstrably derived from /em/. The close allophone is also conditioned by morphological vowel length, as in the noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11 when inflected by extra prefixes, e.g. /nhé:khehla (with an old man), and as in the present perfect tense suffix /á:/ (nonfinal form). The rare occurrence of the close allophones without vowel length in monosyllabic demonstratives (where the standard dialect has the open allophones) does not warrant the setting up of the close allophones as phonemes, hence the departure from Lanham's pattern.
2.2.2. The pattern of consonants is as follows:

**Distinctive features of articulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manner of Articulation</th>
<th>Place of Articulation</th>
<th>Phonetic Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lenis</td>
<td>labial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>alveolar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palatal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>velar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + + +</td>
<td>6 - - k</td>
<td>stops:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>voiced lenis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + - - - -</td>
<td>p t sh(tʃ) k</td>
<td>v-less fortis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + - + - -</td>
<td>b d j(æʃ) g</td>
<td>voiced fortis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + - + - +</td>
<td>ph th - kh</td>
<td>v-less fortis asptd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- - - -</td>
<td>f s ʃ(ʃ) h hl</td>
<td>v-less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + - -</td>
<td>v z - hh dl</td>
<td>voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ -</td>
<td>w l y (w) (l)</td>
<td>sonorants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ m n ny(p) ng(ŋ)</td>
<td></td>
<td>nasals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Clicks**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>dental-velar</th>
<th>palatal-velar</th>
<th>lateral-dental-velar</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>- + - - - -</td>
<td>c</td>
<td>q</td>
<td>x v-less</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + + - - -</td>
<td>go</td>
<td>gq</td>
<td>gx voiced</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + - + - -</td>
<td>oh</td>
<td>qh</td>
<td>xh v-less asptd.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+</td>
<td>nc</td>
<td>nq</td>
<td>nx nasal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Leftovers**

- ʦ (also an allophone of /s/)
- ʃ (also an allophone of /ʃ/)
- ʒ (also an allophone of /ʒ/ (velar fricative)
- ʒ (only in songs) (voiced palatal fricative)
- (only in borrowed words) (glottal stop)
- ɪ (nasalized vowels)
- ə (glottalized vowels)
- ŋ (glottal nasal)
- wh, lh, yh (aspirated sonorants)
- mh, nh, nyh, ngh (aspirated nasals)
Note: The contrasts as to manner of articulation are as follows:

(a) The distinctive feature of lenisness contrasts with fortisness,
" " " occlusion " " friction,
" " " voice " " voicelessness,
" " " aspiration " " ejection,
" " " sonorance " " obstruence,
" " " nasality " " non-nasality.

In this pattern of contrasts, plosives and affricates pattern together and the distinctive feature is described as occlusion. With fricatives, sonorants and nasals, the lenis-fortis and aspirated-jective distinctions are irrelevant, and with sonorants the occlusive-fricative and voiced-voiceless distinctions are also irrelevant. With nasals all distinctive features but nasality are irrelevant. As to place of articulation there is a fivefold contrast: labial-alveolar-palatal-velar-lateral, to which may be added the double points of articulation of clicks (see (d) 1. below).

(b) The lenis occlusive /k/ never occurs in first consonant position of roots; it only occurs in subsequent consonant positions and in prefixes and concords. In contrast the aspirated fortis occlusive /kh/ only occurs in first consonant position and never elsewhere. In the Zululand dialect it occurs exceptionally in the demonstratives /16kho/ and /16kh/ (these are concords) and in the pronoun /khona/ (/kho/ is a concord prefix), but in the standard Natal dialect the demonstratives are /16kh/ and /16kho/ and the pronoun /khona/ (/kho/ is a concord prefix), as distinct from the adverb /khona/ (/kh/ is in first consonant position).

(c) Similarly the velar nasal /ng/ (η) never occurs in first consonant position of roots; it only occurs in subsequent consonant positions and in prefixes and concords, and the nasal compound /ng/ occurs in first consonant position. In some dialects the nasal compound occurs in all positions and the velar nasal does not occur at all except in nasal clusters with velar consonants, in which case it is an allophone of the alveolar nasal. In some dialects the

---

1 By assimilation to the first consonant it may occur elsewhere, as in the word /isikhukukazi ~ isikhukukazi/ (hen) and a few others.
velar nasal and the velar nasal compound occur as free variants (except in first consonant position). These sounds are both written "ng" in the orthography, which is the best solution in view of this diversity.

(d) I depart from Lanham's pattern in the following instances:

1. Lanham includes the clicks in a single frame having eight vertical columns. I prefer to set up two frames: the one for plain consonants with five vertical columns and the other for clicks with three vertical columns. There is no fundamental difference, but a single frame upsets the symmetry of the pattern in that the click columns are empty except for the fortis occlusives. This presentation also avoids Lanham's difficulty in the accommodation of the click feature, essentially an "extra" distinctive feature, within a single frame.

2. I have glottal /h/ and /hh/ in the velar column whereas Lanham has velar /nI/ in this position with a blank below as the voiced sound is wanting. The reason is that /h/ and /nI/ are generally in free variation, and /h/ has phonemic status in a few words only (mostly borrowed words). I therefore treat /h/ as a leftover phoneme. Lanham treats /h/ and /hh/ separately, in a frame by themselves.

3. Lanham has /ts/ as a leftover because it does not fit the pattern and because of its low functional load. I have /r/ and /nI/ as leftovers also, for the same reasons. Just as (ts) is generally an allophonic variation of /s/, so are (r) and (h) generally allophonic variations of /l/ and /h/. Just as /ts/ has phonemic status in a few words only, so have /r/ and /h/, the former only in the ideophones /prr, brr, trr, drr, mprr, mbrr, &c./ (a set of allomorphs in free variation), all imitating the sound of birds flying. The voiced palatal fricative /ʃ/ occurs only in songs, e.g. /ʃi: ʃi: ʃi:/ or /ʃiyo ʃiyo/, "the equivalent of the "fa-la-la" of early English song" (Doke). The glottal stop /-/ occurs only in borrowed words beginning in vowels, e.g. /i-apula/ (apple), /i-Afrika/ (Africa), /um-Afrika/ (an African), cf. /umuluni/ (a herdsman) < /alusa/ (to herd). Lanham also has nasalized /nI/ in /hhihhiiza/ (to speak nasally).
as a leftover; I have also come across nasalized /ŋ/ in /nkgʰ/,
(sound of bell tolling) and /ŋ/ in /nkgʰ/ (sound of hah-de-dahs).
Doke mentions glottalized /ɡ/ and /ŋ/ in ideophones, and the
glottal nasal /ɡʱ/ in /Thi_ifiza/ (to laugh through the nose).
Aspirated sonorants and nasals occasionally occur phonemically
in ideophones, e.g. /mbʰi:/ (the bleating of sheep). The
question of their occurrence elsewhere is considered in the
next section (2.2.3).

4. Lanham has gaps for the velar and lateral sonorants which I
fill with (w) and (1), for these consonants have velar and
lateral qualities as well as labial and alveolar qualities
and it is not certain which are to be regarded as redundant.
With the other lateral consonants it seems certain that the
velar quality of /kl/ and the alveolar quality of /hl/ and
/dl/ are to be regarded as redundant.

5. I treat Lanham's aspirated nasal clicks /nch, nqʰ, nxʰ/ as
consonant clusters, as nasalized voiced clicks /ngo, ngq, ngx/.
The table of consonants shows the "heavy voice" quality of depressor occlusives to be due to the combina-
tion of the distinctive features of fortisness and voice
(both /gɔ, gq, gx/ and /ngɔ, ngq, ngx/ have this quality).
According to Lanham's treatment, this quality is due to the
combination of fortisness and voice with /gɔ, gq, gx/ together
with /b, d, j, g/, but to the combination of fortisness and
aspiration with /nch, nqʰ, nxʰ/. I do not dispute Lanham's
treatment, however. It may well be that the essential quality
of these depressor consonants is not voice but some distinc-
tive feature unaccounted for here, such as "breathiness".

6. There is a temptation to treat /tsh/ as a leftover in the same
way as /ts/, for (tsh) is a variant of /sh/ in nasal compounds
just as (ts) is a variant of /s/. Then, with friction instead
of occlusion as the distinctive feature, /j/ would fill the
voiced fricative gap and the palatal column would disappear
for stops. The lateral column would disappear for stops if

---

1 Tucker in "Sotho-Nguni Orthography and Tone-Marking" (Bulletin S.O.A.S. XIII, 1949) writes, "Nguni consonants fall into two
groups according to their effect on tones, (a) "non-breathy"
consonants and (b) "breathy" consonants"; and, "Logically all
breathy sounds should be followed (orthographically) by "h",
viz., bh, dh, jh, gh, vh, zh, hh, gch, ngch, &c."
/kl/ were treated as a leftover because of its low functional load. Then there would be a frame of three columns for stops and a frame of five columns for spirants, with only one gap in the total pattern, namely the alveolar lenis occlusive. However, although structural symmetry exerts pressure in this direction, the fact that /tsh/ bears a high functional load exerts pressure in the opposite direction, and I leave Lanham's pattern as it is.

2.2.3 An alternative consonant pattern

By adopting Lanham's pattern in general I do not thereby infer that it is the only correct presentation of the consonant pattern of contrasts. It is possible to construct a variety of patterns and to argue that each one is better in certain respects than the others. The weakness of this particular pattern is that the distinctive "heavy voice" quality of depressor consonants is not represented; it is shown to be due to various combinations of distinctive features but to no distinctive feature per se. With stops it is due to the combination of occlusion + voice + fortissness (the lenis voiced occlusives are not depressor consonants), with spirants to the combination of friction + voice, and with clicks to the combination of occlusion + voice. So far the feature of voice appears to be the essential feature of depressor consonants. However, Lanham shows that there are also depressor nasals in Xhosa, and in Zulu there are grounds for saying so too. The situation is now complicated by the fact that the feature of voice is irrelevant with nasals in this presentation. Here the distinctive quality is due to the combination of nasality and aspiration: /mh, nh, nyh (ph), ngh (nh)/. This is also the case with the nasal clicks: /mn, qn, nx/ have this quality whereas /cn, qn, xn/ do not. The essential feature of

---

1 In his Zulu-English Dictionary, Doke records /dhambe/ as an alternative to /dham/ (my mother), the interjections /hame/ and /hiamo/ with tone-pattern /8-3, 3-8/ and /umhama/ (term of endearment for my mother) with tone-pattern /2, 8-3,9/, indicative of "heavy voice" influence, cf. /wama/ (mate, companion) with tone-pattern /2,4,9/. He also records /meze/ (not at all) with tone-pattern /6-3,8,6-3/ and /umchha/ (baboon) with tone-pattern /2,6,3,9/, indicative of "heavy voice" influence, i.e. /meze/ and /umchha/. Ideophones provide more examples.

11 I use Lanham's transcription here, which is designed to show that these are nasal clicks and not nasal-click consonant clusters. In my adaptation of Lanham's pattern I treated the latter as nasal clicks (/nc, nq, nx/) and the former as nasal-click consonant clusters (/ngc, ngq, ngx/) in order to account better for their "heavy voice" quality.
depressor consonants now appears to be glottal friction or aspiration, which is corroborated by the fact that the "heavy voice" plosives were once written "bh", "dh", "gh". This suggestion is also corroborated by Tucker, who equates the "breathiness" of these consonants with aspiration when he writes that "logically all breathy sound should be followed (orthographically) by "h", e.g. bh, dh, Jh, gh, vh, zh, hh, gch, ngoh, &c". Colenso in his Zulu Dictionary of 1860 and in his "First Steps in Zulu" of 1870 writes that "a slight aspiration is heard after the letters b, d, P, t, k"; and that "a nasal aspirate also may be heard, but very rarely". Bryant in his Zulu Dictionary of 1905 also refers to both voiced and voiceless stops as "aspirated" and transcribes them as bh, dh, gh, ph, th, kh. Thus there are two essential features of depressor consonants, voice and aspiration. If aspiration is shown for all "heavy voice" consonants, even with spirants where it is present but irrelevant in Lanham's pattern, and voice for all "breathy" consonants, even with nasals where it is present but irrelevant in Lanham's pattern, the distinctive quality of depressor consonants is seen to be due to the combination of voice and aspiration throughout. There may also be sonorants with this quality; Lanham records /lh/ in Xhosa and in Zulu there are grounds for this assertion too. Rycroft writes, "I venture to suggest that each of the present Zulu orthographic symbols, m, n, l, y and w, has in the past unwittingly been used to represent two sounds, one of which is in fact a lowering (depressor) consonant". These two distinctive features of voice and aspiration coincide in all cases except lenis voiced occlusives (voiced but not aspirated) and fortis aspirated occlusives (aspirated but not voiced). Together they could be regarded as constituting a distinctive feature of "breathiness" or "heaviness", if they could be eliminated as separate distinctive features. The elimination of voice affects the lenis voiced occlusives only, but voice is not particularly distinctive here; in fact they are generally regarded as semi-voiced. The elimination of aspiration affects the fortis aspirated occlusives only, but aspiration is not particularly distinctive here; in fact there are more aspirated consonants than unaspirated. The distinctive feature of jecction satisfactorily accounts for the contrast between ejective /p, t, k/ and injective /c, q, x/ occlusives on

---

1 The symbol "bh" is still used officially to distinguish "cons. b" from "impl. b", but in this study I use the symbols "b" and "6" for the fortis and lenis plosives respectively.
the one hand and the aspirated occlusives /ph, th, kh, ch, qh, xh/ on the other. Jection is also a feature of the lenis occlusives, both the "implosive" /ɓ/ and the "explosive" /k/. It is interesting that Bryant describes them both as "inspirated" and that Doke regards /k/ as "radical". The significant fact is not whether they are injective or ejective but that they are jective and not aspirated; nor whether they are implosive or explosive but that they are lenis and not fortis; nor whether they are voiced or not but whether they are heavy or not. The setting up of jection as a distinctive feature is also in the interests of economy, for it is relevant only to stop consonants whereas aspiration is relevant throughout; heaviness = voice + aspiration. Thus the alternative pattern of consonants is as follows:

**Distinctive features of articulation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Manner of Articulation</th>
<th>Place of Articulation</th>
<th>Phonetic Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lenis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>occlusive</td>
<td>labial</td>
<td>stops:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + +</td>
<td>ɓ - - k</td>
<td>light lenis (ject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>heavy</td>
<td>alveolar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + +</td>
<td>t - - k</td>
<td>light fortis (ject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jective</td>
<td>palatal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + +</td>
<td>j - - k</td>
<td>heavy fortis (asptd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sonorant</td>
<td>velar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + +</td>
<td>g - - k</td>
<td>light fortis (asptd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nasal</td>
<td>lateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ + + + + +</td>
<td>ph th - kh</td>
<td>spirants:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cliches</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dental-velar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + + + + +</td>
<td>c q x</td>
<td>light (ject)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>palatal-velar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + + + + +</td>
<td>gc sq sx</td>
<td>heavy (asptd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>lateral-dental-velar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- + + + + +</td>
<td>ch qh xh</td>
<td>light (asptd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(a) The contrasts as to manner of articulation are as follows:

- The distinctive feature of lenisness contrasts with fortisness
- Occlusion contrasts with friction
- Heaviness contrasts with lightness
- Ejection contrasts with aspiration
- Sonorance contrasts with obstruence
- Nasality contrasts with non-nasality

The heavy-light or breathy-nonbreathy distinction is relevant throughout, but the heavy sonorants and nasals occur phonemically only occasionally.

(b) Compared with Lanham's pattern, this pattern shows the distinction between /b,k/ and /p,k/ to depend on the lenis-fortis contrast only, the soft voicing of /b/ and /k/ being a nondistinctive concomitant of lenisness. The distinction between /b,k/ and /b,g/ depends on the heavy-light contrast as well as on the lenis-fortis contrast, whereas Lanham's pattern shows the distinction to depend on the latter contrast only. This contrast is not the most significant, however, for many investigators have noted the heaviness of /b,g/ in contrast to the lightness or softness of /b,k/. The attribution of voice as a distinctive feature of the lenis occlusives is a weak spot in Lanham's pattern of contrasts.

(c) This pattern is not a substitute for Lanham's pattern but an alternative to it. Seeing that it was suggested by a consideration of consonant sounds that occur rather rarely as phonemes, it is in danger of representing a pattern that is obsolete. However, even if the heavy sonorants and nasals are omitted from the presentation, the consideration of these sounds has resulted in the determination of the distinctive quality of depressor consonants as voiced glottal friction, and so, by the elimination of voice and aspiration as separate distinctive features, perhaps in a better picture of the significant contrasts between stop consonants (occlusives and clicks). Furthermore, this presentation is relevant in tonology to the interpretation of rising tones.

2.3. Phoneme Clusters

Zulu phonology does not permit the clustering of vowels, and the only permitted consonant clusters are those represented by the

---

1 Or possibly a pattern that is not yet fully established.
formulas: NC, Gw, NCw. Lanham rejects the interpretation of affricates as clusters (stop + spirant) because of the restricted association of spirants with other consonants. He also gives the reason that "the affricates so clearly help to fill out the domal order (the palatal column) that the separation of stop from spirant in analysis would constitute a distortion of the phonological pattern" (p.35), a reason of lesser validity for the linguist can construct different patterns from identical facts. There is also the reason that although (tsh) could be analyzed as /t + sh/, (j) could not be analyzed as /d + j/, for (j) is wanting in Zulu phonology (except for /zi: zi: ("fa-la-la") which cannot count). The evidence of the affricate allophones of spirants also points to a unitary interpretation of affricates. Here we come close to the subject of phonemic overlapping again, and in passing we note that "the anomaly of /ts/ as phoneme and (dz) as allophone of /z/" (p.35) disappears when we admit (ts) as allophone of /s/ as well as /ts/ as phoneme.

The NC Cluster: The homorganic nasal clusters with all consonants except 6 and k; ph, th, kh; h and hh; l and the nasals; c, q, x; ch, qh, xh; and sh.

The Cw Cluster: The labial-velar sonorant clusters with all consonants except 6, p, ph, b, m (bilabials as opposed to dentilabials).

The NCw Cluster: The triple cluster is subject to the same phonotactic rules as control the two double clusters.

Where consonants that are phonotactically incompatible are brought together by the combination of morphemes, morphophonemic changes operate to avoid these nonpermitted consonant clusters.

2.4. Morphophonology

The clustering of vowels is avoided by the morphophonemic changes known as coalescence (a + i > e, a + u > o, a + a > a), consonantalization (i + V > yV, u + V > wV), and elision (a + a > a, a + e > e, a + o > o; Ca + V > CV, Ci + V > CV, Cu + V > CV~CV) (consonantalization). The clustering of the verb concords /a, i, u/ with foregoing vowels is prevented by the semivowels/w/ and /y/, and the clustering of the locative prefix /e/ with foregoing vowels is prevented by /e/, e.g. /nha + ekhaya > nhâs'khâyâ/ (and at home), /ba+ ekhaya > bâs'khâyâ/ (they are at home).
Nonpermitted consonant clusters of the NC type are avoided by the morphophonemic changes known as nasalization or nasal influence:

- \( N + 6 \rightarrow mb \).
- \( N + k \) (no example).
- \( N + ph, th, kh \rightarrow mp, nt, nk \).
- \( N + h \) and \( hh \rightarrow h \) (or \( nk \)) and \( hh \) (or \( ng \)).
- \( N + l \) and the nasals \( > l \) (or \( nd \)) and the nasals.
- \( N + c, q, x \rightarrow nko, nkq, nkx \).
- \( N + ch, qh, xh \rightarrow nko, nkq, nkx \).
- \( N + sh \rightarrow ntsh \).

The homorganic nasal clusters very rarely with voiceless clicks:

- \( N + c, q, x \rightarrow nko, nkq, nkx \). ii

The homorganic nasal clusters regularly with voiced clicks:

- \( N + gc, gq, gx \rightarrow ngc, ngq, ngx \).

The homorganic nasal clusters with spirants (except \( /h/ \) and \( /hh/ \) above) bringing about allophonic changes to affricates. If we observe the rule which does not permit the overlapping of phonemes, then it does not cluster with \( /s/ \) and \( /sh/ \) and \( /N+ s > nts/ \) and \( /N+ sh > ntsh/ \) represent morphophonemic changes. If on the other hand we admit phonemic overlapping with phonemes of low functional load only, then it clusters with \( /s/ \) but not with \( /sh/ \), hence the change \( /N+ sh > ntsh/ \) included in the list of changes above.

Nonpermitted consonant clusters of the Cw type are avoided by the morphophonemic changes known as palatalization:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Passive verbs</th>
<th>Locative nouns</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6 + w &gt; tshw</td>
<td>tsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>p + w &gt; tshw</td>
<td>tsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b + w &gt; jw</td>
<td>j</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ph + w &gt; shw</td>
<td>sh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m + w &gt; nyw</td>
<td>ny</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

There are other phonologically conditioned changes, but it is not the intention to present a complete statement of all the morphophonemic changes in the language.

i This change is obsolete, but note /indima/ (plowed field) < /lima/ (to plow) and /ulimi/ (tongue) > /izilimi/ (regular plural) ~/izindimi/ (archaism). With the nasals, the homorganic nasal is elided, e.g. /mali eN+ ningi > imali eningi/ (much money).

ii Not to be confused with the nasal clicks /nc, nq, nx/.
2.5. Suprasegmental Phonemes

(i) The suprasegmental features of Zulu phonology include pitch or tone, length, stress, intonation, pause and tempo. Suprasegmental features are not as amenable to phonemic analysis as segmental features, for the reason that the techniques of phonemic analysis were originally developed to deal with the latter. I believe a prosodic analysis as suggested by Firth to be better suited to these features. Phonemic analysis concentrates on the paradigmatic aspect rather than the syntagmatic or structural aspect, whereas prosodic analysis takes into account not only the paradigmatic relations (corresponding to morphological form) but also the structural relations (corresponding to syntactical function). The setting up of suprasegmental phonemes does not redress the bias of phonemic analysis, for the phonemic approach predisposes the attribution of features to segments, whereas the significant fact about these features is that they extend across segments: they are not "segmental" but "suprasegmental". The prosodic approach gives a different division of phonological features from the conventional segmental-suprasegmental division, into what Firth terms "phonematic units" (the building-bricks of phonology) and "prosodies" (the mortar which binds them together). Applied to Zulu phonology, it is possible to conceive of tone as "segmental" and intonation as "suprasegmental", of inherent morphological length as "segmental" and imposed syntactical length as "suprasegmental". The influence of nasals on consonants (which is made much of) and on vowels (which is neglected) could be conceived of as the prosody of nasalization. The influence of the labial-velar sonorant on consonants (which is made much of - palatalized consonants) and on vowels (which is neglected - labialized vowels) could be conceived of as a prosody also. Firth's approach has fruitful possibilities; and yet, the orthographic difficulties consequent upon prosodic analysis mentioned under 1.2.a., together with a desire not to complicate the description of phonology and tonology by an unconventional and still experimental approach, leads back to phonemic analysis.

(ii) There is a fundamental difference between features conventionally classified as segmental and suprasegmental respectively: the former are characterised by absolute phonetic qualities and the latter by relative phonetic qualities. Pike's preface to "Tone
Languages mentions the "special practical problems arising from the application of the principles of phonemic analysis to tonal phonemes --- (due to) the relative nature of significant pitch units", and all analysts of tonal systems preface their studies with similar remarks. The characteristic of relativity distinguishes all suprasegmental features. It is just as pointless to determine exactly how long a long vowel is or how strong a strong stress is as it is to determine how high a high tone is, as these absolute qualities depend not only upon the linguistic context but also upon the extralinguistic context, whether the speaker is male or female, young or old, lively or languid. The point to determine is whether a tone is relatively higher or lower, a vowel relatively longer or shorter, a stress relatively stronger or weaker, in a particular context.

(iii) The complex interrelationships between suprasegmental features contribute as much to the difficulty of treating them as the characteristic of relativity. In English there are four stress phonemes and four pitch phonemes, and yet there is a tendency to associate stronger stress with higher pitch and also with longer length. The interrelationships in Zulu phonology are extremely difficult to disentangle, so much so that it is best to deal with them concurrently to the suprasegmental features themselves. Here I deal with length, stress, intonation, and the interrelations between them. In the next chapter I deal with tone by itself, and then its interrelations with other suprasegmental features.

(iv) Suprasegmental features also interact with segmental features. In English, for instance, stress has an effect on vowel quality. The interrelations in Zulu phonology between length and the mid vowels and between tone and the depressor consonants are dealt with under length and tone respectively. There are also interrelations between segmental features; these are conventionally handled under phonemics (changes of allophone) and morphophonemics (changes of phoneme).

(v) I have excluded the exaggerations resulting from "emotional overlay". In English the feature that is most exaggerated in forceful speech is stress. In Zulu it is vowel length, but tone and stress may also be exaggerated beyond the normal limits. I regard these exaggerations as distortions and draw attention to them only in passing.
2.5.1. Length

Vowel length functions on two different levels and in two different ways. It functions at the morphological level to differentiate morphological units and it functions at the syntactical level to demarcate syntactical units. The methodological problem has already been discussed under 1.2.1. (structural levels): there is no alternative to the interpretation of vowel length in its different structural roles except by reference to grammar. Lanham distinguishes between "inherent" (morphological) length and "imposed" (syntactical) length, and notes that the latter is associated with "a feature of placement" on the penultimate syllable of certain syntactic units.

2.5.1.1. Inherent length

Inherent length /i:/ functions morphologically to differentiate certain morphological units or morphemes:

1. The noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11 /i:/ and /u:/, of class 2a /ɔ:/, and of classes 8 and 10 /i:/ and /i:ŋ/ which occur as allomorphs (contractions) of the full forms /ili-/ and /ulu-/ which are rare, /awo-/ which is very rare, and /izi-/ and /iziŋ-/ which are common, respectively. That the presence of inherent length contrasts significantly with its absence is clearly shown in the case of the noun prefixes of classes 9 and 10: /indağu/ (Cl.9 - singular) and /㏌dündun/ (Class 10 - plural). In quick speech there is a tendency for the vowel length of the prefixes of classes 2a, 5 and 11 to disappear, which is not so with the prefixes of classes 8 and 10, probably because these contractions are historically more recent.

2. The indicative past tense infix /a:/, e.g. /waːdɔːŋa injá/ (he saw a dog), cf. /waːdɔːŋa injá/ (and he saw a dog - subjunctive past tense). In quick speech the high-to-low falling tone is replaced by a high level tone and the vowel length tends to disappear.

3. The subjunctive past tense negative infix /ŋa:/, e.g. /wàndʒaːŋa ́nthɛ/ (and he did not see anything), cf. /wàndʒaːŋa ́/thɛ/ (he can write - potential present tense). In quick speech the high-to-low falling tone is replaced by

---

1 I refer only to "checked" vowel length here; "unchecked" vowel length functions as an intonation constituent (see 2.5.3.).
a level tone. There is an alternative subjunctive past tense negative infix /’aday/, e.g. /’adadu:luuthë/ (and he did not see anything).

4. The potential present tense negative infix /’ngåa/, e.g. /’ngåabükla/ (he cannot write).
   In quick speech the high-to-low falling tone is replaced by a level tone.

5. The indicative present future tense negative infixes /’zul:/ and /’në:/, which are contractions of /’zukal/ and /’yukal/ and, which are contracted to /’zh/ and /’yë/ (definite and indefinite future respectively). All these forms are in use as allomorphs, e.g. /’zul:ka’thenga/ ~ /’zul:ki’thenga/ ~ /’zul:ka’thenga/ (they will not buy).

6. The indicative present future tense indefinite positive infix /’u:/ which is a contraction: /’yukal > ’yu > y/, e.g. /’yuka:thenga/, /’yuka:thenga/ (they will go). In quick speech /’yuka:thenga/, /’yu:thenga/.

7. The future implication infixes /’yë:/ (going to) contracted from /’ya + uka/ and /’zë:/ (coming to) contracted from /’za + uka/,
   e.g. /’yë:ka’thenga/ (they are going to buy),
   cf. /’yuka:thenga/ (they will buy - indefinite future),
   e.g. /’yë:zë:ka’thenga/ (they are coming to buy),
   cf. /’zë:ka’thenga/ (they will buy - definite future).
   Vowel length is often absent in the case of /’yë:/, but the distinction is still maintained: /’yë:ka’thenga/ and /’yuka:thenga/ ~ /’yë:ka’thenga/.

8. The subjunctive obligation implication infix /’yë:/, which is probably a contraction itself and which is often contracted to /’yë/,
   e.g. /’yë:ka’ambë/ ~ /’yë:ka’ambë/ (they ought to go).

9. The present perfect tense suffix /’e:/, which is the nonfinal form corresponding to the final form /’ile/, of which it probably represents a contraction. Careful speech /’e:/ > normal speech /’ë:/ > quick speech /’ë/, but the distinctiveness of this suffix is maintained if not by vowel length then by the factors of final stress 
   and close mid-vowel allophone that it conditions. The phoneme /’ë/ is present either patently

---

1 The question of the interrelationship of stress and length is discussed under 2.5.2. below.
or latently and therefore must be marked. The conditioning of close mid-vowel allophones by inherent length but not by imposed length as a means of separating these two length phonemes at the phonological level without resort to grammar, fails in that close allophones occur with penultimate length if there is a close vowel in the final syllable. Note interaction between suprasegmental and segmental phonemes: inherent length and close allophones.

10. The third position demonstrative suffix /ya:/, which occurs as an allomorph (contraction) of the full form /yana:/, e.g. /tla:kya:/ (class 2), /bwa:ya:/ (class 1). When the demonstrative precedes the noun, the high-to-low falling tone is normally replaced by a high level tone, and in quick speech the vowel length disappears. This suffix is nevertheless always stressed: the phrase /ya:/ is present and therefore must be marked. The first syllable of this demonstrative also has vowel length: /la:ya:/ (these) > /la:ya:/ (those) > /ya:ya:/ (yonder). Here it may seem that the length of the first syllable is not inherent but imposed to form the third position form from the first position form, but morphophonemics accounts satisfactorily for this "process" in terms of "arrangement": the first position form is /la:ya: ~ la:ya:/, the latter being the derivational allomorph for the third position form.

11. The monosyllabic first position demonstratives /la:, le:, la/. In the standard dialect these forms occur only as inflectional allomorphs of /la, le, la/, in which vowel length is latent and the phoneme /a/ represented by final stress only, e.g. /kla:la:/ (to this one, class 1 demonstrative, with final stress), cf. /kla:la:/ (to it, class 5 absolute pronoun, with penultimate stress).

12. The adverbs /la:/ (here), /le/: (there), /nje:/ (so, just), and /nâ:/ (the spoken question-mark: /mâ:lâ:nâ/ (he is going to go?)). Only the last has vowel length always. The rest occur as inflectional allomorphs in the standard dialect, in which vowel length is latent and the phoneme /a/ represented by final stress only, e.g. /mâ:la:/ (they are here, with final stress), cf. /mâ:la:/ (they refuse, with penultimate stress).

13. The conjunctive adverbs /mâlâ:/ (when), /nxa:/ (when, if), /nâ:/ (if, if it might be that), and /mâ:/ (when, a contraction of /mâa/). Only the last has vowel length always. The vowel length that is

---

1 The question of the interrelationship of stress and length is discussed under 2.5.2. below.
sometimes apparent in these words and in the monosyllabic demonstratives (11) and adverbs (12) is possibly a nondistinctive concomitant of stress.

14. The adverbs /i:zolo/ (yesterday) and /u:vlVl/ (dawn), which are evidently derived from noun classes 5 and 11 where the prefixes are /i:/ and /u:/ respectively. The allomorphs without vowel length are gaining in usage.

15. The adjective root /nj~:/ (so), which is probably the adverb /nj~:/ in copulative construction where it functions adjectivally, with final stress and latent vowel length, e.g. /d'b nj~:, d'b~:nj~:/ (they are so, they who are so, indicating number with the fingers, size with the hand, etc.), so that it is treated as an adjective root from which the adverb /k'a'nj~:/ (like this, so) is then derived.

16. The agentive extra prefixes /zY:, zY:, zY:, 6M:/, e.g. /s!:hlalo/ (by/it is a chair). These examples of inherent length have arisen probably on analogy with the agentive extra prefix /lh/ in conjunction with the noun prefixes /i:/ and /u:/ of noun classes 5 and 11. The difference is that inherent length resides in the noun prefix here and the alternative to /lhWikhehla/ is /yi:Wikhehla/, whereas the alternative to /s!:hlalo/ is /yi:s:Wikhehla/. We would not expect to find such agentive prefixes in noun classes 1, 3, 4, 6, 9, but the possibilities are realized elsewhere in all classes except 2 and 15, where /*6M:/ and /*kM:/ do not exist. Some speakers deny

The question of the interrelationship of stress and length is discussed under 2.5.2. below.

The adverb /nj~:/ has the allomorph /nj~:n~:/ and the positional forms /nj~:l~:/ (thus) and /nj~:y~:/ (as yonder) as though it were a demonstrative; it also has the interrogative form /nj~:n~:/ (how?). Like /nj~:/ itself, these forms are treated as adjective roots from which the adverbs /k'n~:n~:/ and /k'n~:l~:/ are then derived. The original adverbs are now used only in a few fixed expressions, e.g. /d'b nj~:, d'b~:nj~:/ (he says so, he says thus) /d'b~:n~:nj~:/ (how am I to act?, what am I to do?). Otherwise the adverbs /nj~:/ and /nj~:l~:/ are now widely used with the meanings of "just" and "always" respectively, in which case /nj~:/ (determining nonfinal forms) occurs as /nj~:/ (determining final forms), but a direct contrast is observable only with the verb /sho/: /d'b~:nj~:/ (he says so) and /d'y~:sho~:nj~:/ (he simply speaks).

Because of this difference I interpret as /lhWikhehla/ rather than as /y Wikhehla/, a somewhat arbitrary judgement (see 3.2.3.11ii).
the existence of /6i:/ (class 14) also.

17. The verb prefix in dependent positive copulative constructions, e.g. /dakﬁkhona/, /da6e:khon6a/ (if we/they are present), cf. /elkhona/, /6akhona/ (we/they are present). The high-to-low falling tone often occurs as a high level tone. This example of inherent length is probably due to contraction from /*sﬁl/, *6a6il/1, /ii/ being the base to which verbal concords are prefixed in dependent copulative constructions in Southern Suthu and other languages.

18. The progressive implication prefix /sa/ occurs as /se:/ in copulative constructions, probably due to contraction from /*sﬁl/, /ii/ being the verbal base for all copulative constructions in some languages, e.g. /sadhekho6a/ (we are still present).

19. The relative concords /a:, e:, o:/, which are optional allomorphs of /a/, e, o/ in relative copulative constructions without verbal concords, i.e. constructions based on adjectives (especially monosyllabic stem adjectives) and self-standing possessives (especially possessive pronouns), e.g. /66ant6 /6:66/ (evil people) /66an6a, 666:6a, 66w6a/ (mine).

With adjectives, only the present positive forms have no verbal concords, e.g. /66a66/ (who are evil), cf. /66e6e66/ (who are not evil).

20. Ideophones and interjections, where inherent length occurs not in affixes but in roots, e.g. ideophone /zwi:/ (of flinging through the air).
interjection /bih6a/ (of assent, "yes").
Also /di:ma:/ (my mother).

Note:
(a) The reason why inherent length is treated as a long vowel rather than as a double vowel is apparent tonologically. Whereas the noun prefixes /i:/ and /u:/ could be described as /ii/ and /uu/,

1 Here it may seem that vowel length is imposed: /a/, 66 > a:, 66:/, but the difference is described in terms of different morphemes or different allomorphs of the same morpheme. Beuchat10 discusses this question: she seems to favour the latter treatment on the grounds of economy.

ii In dependent negative copulative constructions /*sﬂi6l > *si66 > si66/, and there is no phoneme of vowel length.
the subjunctive and potential negative infixes /ngâ:/ and /ngë:/ could not be described as */ngâ:/ and */ngë:/ because such forms could not be realized except as /ngâ/ and /ngë:/ due to tonal displacement.

Most of the occurrences of the phoneme of inherent length represent contractions and coincide with the high-to-low falling tone. Lanham makes much of this coincidence, so much so that he marks inherent length only when it does not coincide with this tone. This confuses the distinction between inherent and imposed length, for the length concomitant of this tone is a manifestation of either inherent or imposed length, and sometimes of both at once. Lanham marks the length concomitant where it is imposed but not where it is inherent. He writes, "A high degree of internal conflict is implied in an analysis (sic - I would say "in a system") in which length is employed not only to signal junctures of high frequency (imposed syntactical length) but also as a high-frequency phoneme which distinguishes morphs (inherent morphological length). It is barely conceivable that a linguistic system would tolerate such conflict. It is our decision therefore to regard inherent length as a "leftover" phoneme and to mark it only where it occurs with high or low tones and not where it coincides with the high-to-low falling tone" (p.152-153). I do not see how this decision resolves the conflict.

2.5.1.2. Imposed length

Imposed length /+/ functions syntactically to demarcate certain syntactical units or phrases:

1. Delimitative + substantive
2. Substantive + qualificative
3. Qualificative +/- adverbial
4. Predicative +/- adverbial
5. Substantive (subject) +/- predicative
6. Predicative (- object concord) + substantive (object).
7. Predicative (- object concord) + substantive +/- adverbial

\[
\text{e.g. } /\text{tandis}/ \text{ (a word), where the two phonemes of vowel length coincide in the penultimate syllable so that the length concomitant is a manifestation of both } /\text{a}/ \text{ and } /\text{a}/ \text{ at once.}
\]
There are also combinations of these units, which do not pretend to constitute the complete list.

Note:

(a) The syntax class of substantive consists of nominals (independent nominals or nouns, and self-standing dependent nominals or adjectives, pronouns and demonstratives). Qualificatives are adjectives and possessive nominals. Delimitatives are pronouns and demonstratives. The syntax class of predicative consists of verbs. Adverbials consist of genderless nominals or adverbs and most inflected nominals, and they may or may not constitute syntactical units with preceding words (hence "+/- adverbials" above), depending upon whether they are strong adjuncts or weak adjuncts. Adverbs of time are weak adjuncts, particularly /m &=/ (now). "Substantive +/- predicative" also may or may not constitute a syntactical unit: /h& &= + k~& +/ (the people have arrived) or /h& &= + k~& +/ (the people, they have arrived). "Predicative + substantive" constitutes a syntactical unit only if there is no object concord: /s1 &n h & &= +/ (we see the people), cf. /sly&h& & &= + h & &= +/ (we see them, the people), where the syntax unit is shown by the use of the object concord, the final form of the verb tense, and imposed length. There are no syntax units "qualificative + substantive" and "substantive + delimitative", for when qualificatives and delimitatives change their normal word order they change their function to substantive, e.g. /h& &= h & & k~& +/ (the big people), cf. /h & & k~& + h & &= +/ (the big ones, the people), and /h & &n k & & h & &= +/ (all the people, cf. /h & &= + h & &n k & & +/ (the people, all of them).

(b) Imposed length functions to demarcate syntax units, which is why it is marked at the ends of words instead of in the penultimate syllable where it actually occurs. The intonational phonemes /., /?, /1/, and // whose main constituent is pause, demarcate syntax units known as sentences and clauses respectively. The length phoneme /+/ demarcates syntax units known as phrases and it is not normally accompanied by pause and does not normally affect the close transition from word to word in Zulu. Phonemes that demarcate as opposed to those that differentiate, are conventionally called juncture phonemes.
(c) Imposed length or "penultimate length" is generally regarded as the marker of the word as a phonological unit. However, I agree with Lanham when he writes that "penultimate length, which is often accepted as a criterion for word division, is found to demarcate syntactic structure and not, in normal speech, words individually" (p.22) - "in normal speech", because penultimate length has the potentiality for occurrence with almost all words, and in slow speech this potentiality may be realized. Even here, however, there are some words with which penultimate length cannot occur: ideophones, monosyllabic words and words with final length or stress (e.g. third position demonstratives and inflected monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs). According to Lanham words are grammatical units, not phonological units, but I suggest that they are also phonological units marked by primary stress (see 2.5.2.1.).

(d) I do not agree with Lanham's decision not to mark inherent length when it coincides with the high-to-low falling tone (see Note (b) under 2.5.1.1.). I therefore do not agree with him when he writes of this tone (p.157) that "the occurrence of its length concomitant in word-penultimate syllables may reduce the efficacy of imposed length as a contrastive unit" (it is inherent length which sometimes does this) and that "the most serious threat to the system is that of the overlapping of its length concomitant with imposed length" (it is inherent length which sometimes does this). As he himself says, the coincidence of this tone with imposed length is "a regular occurrence" for the former is conditioned by the latter; when the latter is absent, the former is substituted by high or low tones according to the rules of tonal grammar. This substitution, he says, does not always operate. He gives the example of /wâphâ +/ (he gave) which maintains this pattern always, and concludes that "imposed length must be marked in every occurrence of this form" (p.158); but this form is /wâphâ +/ finally and /wâphâ/ nonfinally, i.e. the vowel length represents both /1/ and /+/ finally and only /1/ nonfinally. Thus it is inherent length which must be marked in every occurrence, not imposed length.

(e) Therefore, there is a possibility of overlapping between /1/ and /+/, a complete overlapping in which the feature of vowel length represents both /1/ and /+/ at once. Lanham postulates a feature of "significant placement": "the
placement feature on which /i/ relies to separate it from /i/ is its fixed position in relation to grammatic word-boundaries", i.e. the penultimate syllable. However, when words having inherent length in the penultimate syllable occur at the ends of phrases, it is impossible to separate these two length phonemes. This situation arises with monosyllabic stem nouns under the heading 1 above (see 2.5.1.1.), e.g. /izəf+/ (a word), and with monosyllabic stem verbs under the headings 2 to 8 above (see 2.5.1.1.), e.g. /wʌ:də+/ (he ate), /lʌŋə:də+/ (he cannot eat).

2.5.2. Stress

The suprasegmental features of length and stress are so closely interrelated that it is extremely difficult to separate them. There appear to be two stress phonemes in Zulu, a primary penultimate stress which serves to mark words and a secondary root-initial stress which serves to mark roots. The situation is greatly complicated by the fact that in the majority of words the root-initial syllable is the penultimate syllable of the word so that the two stress phonemes completely overlap, and also by the fact that this syllable also bears the phoneme of penultimate length. Furthermore, there are indications both that stress is sometimes a non-distinctive concomitant of length and that length is sometimes a nondistinctive concomitant of stress. The situation is so complex and the nature of stress itself so elusive, that I would regard this section as almost hypothetical and so subject to verification.

2.5.2.1. Primary or word stress functions to demarcate words.

(1) Doke¹¹ writes that "full length is usually found in the position of main stress" (p.180) and that "main stress is normally on the penultimate syllable of the word" (p.183). He also records main stress on the final syllables of words incorporating the suffixes /yə:/ (third position demonstrative) and /ə:/ (nonfinal form of the present perfect tense), and of inflected monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs (p.187). In all these cases stress coincides with syllables incorporating either imposed penultimate length or inherent final length, which suggests the nondistinctiveness of stress.

¹¹ The stress which sometimes gives prominence to a final syllable is emphatic stress due to "emotional overlay" and therefore outside this study. At most it could be regarded as a constituent of an intonational phoneme.
(ii) Lanham\textsuperscript{12} regards stress as nondistinctive, being "predictable in terms of length and sometimes high pitch" (p.161). He specifically mentions the monosyllabic demonstratives, the demonstrative suffix /ya:/ and the perfect suffix /əi/ as syllables of particular prominence, which he attributes to the combination of length and high pitch. However, the monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs are not prominent as to length (they do not have length in standard speech) nor as to pitch (they do not have the high-to-low falling tone), but they are nevertheless prominent. This prominence in particular is noticeable when they are inflected, e.g. /ki'la/ (to this one, with final stress), /gal/ (they are here, with final stress), /sam ə:i:l/ (if we are here, with final stress), which shows the occurrence of stress apart from length.

(iii) Stress also seems to occur apart from length in the penultimate syllables of words which do not terminate the syntax units known as phrases. Penultimate stress, with or without penultimate length, therefore functions to demarcate words, and word division suffices to mark it. The elision of final syllables does not affect its function, and word division together with the apostrophe still suffices to mark it. Final elision occurs most often within phrases, e.g. /sibón əbantu/ (we see the people), but the presence of penultimate length is no bar to its occurrence between phrases, e.g. /sibabón əbantu/ (we do see the people).\textsuperscript{1}

(iv) Although penultimate stress and penultimate length are separate features, stress nevertheless cannot occur in the penultimate syllables of words which cannot take syntactical length. Here we see the interrelationship between length and stress. Such words are monosyllabic words and words incorporating the phoneme of morphological length in the final syllable, where stress is not penultimate but ultimate. Doke\textsuperscript{11} writes that "main stress is normally on the penultimate syllable of the word" (p.183), but that with some words it is "on the final syllable of the word" (p.187). It is

\textsuperscript{1} Nouns of classes 9, 5 and 11 with monosyllabic stems are liable to lose word status in certain constructions, e.g. /angizwa-zwa/ (I hear no word) with penultimate length and stress on "zwa", cf. the Natal alternative /angizwa lizwa/; e.g. /bakho-nja/ (there is no dog) with penultimate length and stress on "kho", cf. the Natal alternative /bakho lina/.

After demonstratives: /li'la-zwa/ (this word), /le-nja/ (this dog), /le-yo-nja/ (that dog), to which there are no alternatives.
therefore to be designated not as penultimate stress but as primary or word stress. Word division still suffices to mark it with monosyllabic words, and with words in which it is conditioned by the phoneme of morphological length in the final syllable, e.g. the third position demonstrative with suffix /ya/ and the nonfinal form of the present perfect tense with suffix /8i/, it is marked as such.

(v) With these words incorporating final morphological length, the presence of final stress together with the absence of penultimate stress is so strongly distinctive that the presence of vowel length itself tends to disappear. This is commonly the case with the nonfinal form of the present perfect tense. The phoneme /i/ is nevertheless present, if not overtly as length then covertly as stress. In words with penultimate stress, stress often coincides with penultimate syntactical length; in words with ultimate stress, stress often coincides with ultimate morphological length. That this is so shows the interrelationship between length and stress. That the coincidence is not absolute shows the distinctiveness of primary stress.

(vi) Inflected monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs are also words which cannot take imposed penultimate length, and I attribute the fact to the presence of the phonemes of morphological length in the final syllable. That these words have no final length in the standard dialect, that they are not contractions\(^1\), and that it is only when they are inflected that it is necessary to resort to the postulation of latent final length (when uninflected they are stressed as monosyllabic words and there is no need for this postulation), raise the question: is final stress conditioned by final length or final length by final stress? which is the conditioning factor? Stress does condition slight lengthening, which could account for the vowel length that is sometimes apparent in monosyllabic words.

\(^1\) The forms /l6nə, l6nə, l6nə/ which occur as allomorphs of the demonstratives /l6, l6, l6/ in substantive function only, are expansions for the sake of penultimate stress rather than the reverse. On the other hand the adverb /l6/ could be described as a contraction of the full form /l6nə/. To suggest that /l6, l6, l6/ are contractions of /*l6nə, *l6nə, l6nə/ (first position forms) an analogy with /l6nə, l6nə, l6nə/ (second position forms) is purely hypothetical, except in the case of /l6hə/, which is rather an expansion of /l6/ than the reverse.
(see 2.5.1.1: 11, 12, 13). Here we see a different sort of interrelationship between length and stress. However, the interpretation of final length as a nondistinctive concomitant of final stress would deny placement in the final syllable to the phoneme of inherent length. There is no reason why it should not occur there and it undoubtedly does in the case of the suffixes /ya:/ and /e:/ (see 2.5.1.1: 9 and 10). Furthermore, the present perfect tense suffix /a:/ provides evidence of the stress effects of latent final length, and these effects are identical in the inflected monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs. I therefore give a unitary interpretation and set up /iː/, /iː/ and /iː/ as the inflectional allomorphs of the monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs (see 2.5.1.1: 11 and 12). With these words imposed length cannot occur penultimately because of the presence of latent final length, e.g. /sɪː/ (we are here), but inherent length can occur penultimately, e.g. /ʌmə siːlː/ (if we are here). Here length and stress clearly occur as separate distinctive features: the first syllable is lengthened but not stressed and the last syllable is stressed but not lengthened.

(vii) Ideophones are also words which cannot take penultimate length nor therefore penultimate stress. The position here is unique in that ideophones cannot take penultimate length regardless of whether they are monosyllabic or polysyllabic and regardless of whether they have inherent length in the final syllable. As defined by the criterion of primary stress, they are not words. Lanham writes with regard to ideophones that "the function of length as a demarcator is completely suspended, --- and there is no alternative to the isolation of ideophones according to their grammatic identity" (p. 12-13). However, ideophones are phonologically definable in terms of open transition, for they are set apart before and after by the juncture of open transition (see 2.5.5. Transition). This setting apart is shown in transcription by the use of inverted commas, e.g. /waːwa wʌtɬ "gumbukɬuːq" pənɑː/ (he fell down head over heels),

The fact that vowel length is sometimes apparent dialectically corroborates this interpretation.
2.5.2.2. Secondary or root stress functions to demarcate roots.

(i) Apart from ideophones, the position with regard to root stress is complicated by the fact that root stress often coincides with word stress, for the first syllable of the root is generally the penultimate syllable of the word and the two stress phonemes overlap on this syllable. With ideophones, however, there is neither imposed length nor primary stress and the position is at its clearest. Ideophones have stress on the first syllable of the root. This stress tends to condition slight lengthening, particularly in monosyllabic ideophones, and in polysyllabic ideophones it tends to condition high tones, e.g. /gındanqo /, /gındanqo/ and /wlokoqo/. The phoneme of inherent length sometimes overlaps with the length concomitant of stress in monosyllabic ideophones, e.g. /zwI:/ (of flinging). Ideophones are uninflectionable so that the first syllable of the root is always the first syllable of the word, and we could consider the occurrence of primary stress on initial syllables if it were not for the evidence of root stress elsewhere in the language. It is true that root stress is far more prominent in ideophones than elsewhere, but this is due to the absence of the stronger primary stress.

(ii) The most attractive evidence for the existence of root stress apart from ideophones is the mutual exclusiveness of (kh) and (k) and of (ng) and (ŋ) according to the presence or absence of root stress: only (kh) and (ng) can occur in root-initial syllables and only (k) and (ŋ) can occur elsewhere. It is not possible to present these sounds as allophones conditioned by root stress, however, because of the Zululand pronunciation /lökha/, /lökha/; khɔnɔ/ (demonstratives and pronoun) instead of the Natal pronunciation /lök, lökɔ; kɔnɔ/, (cf. adverb /khɔnɔ/), and because of the use of /ng/ in all positions dialectically.

In Doke's Grammar monosyllabic ideophones are marked /zwI:/, zwI:/, /zwI:/, where I would mark them /zwI/ (length due to stress), /zwI/ (length due to stress and tone), /zwI/ (length due to stress and inherent length). They refer to great noise, singleness ("only one"), and flinging through the air.
(iii) Although root stress often coincides with word stress in penultimate syllables, this coincidence is removed when derivative suffixes are added to noun and verb roots and when the "enclitics" are added to verb stems. Regarding the suffixing of the "enclitics", /phi/ (where?), /ni/ (what?), /ke/ (so, then), /ze/ (with nothing), /yo/ (signifying the end of certain relative constructions), Doke writes that they "draw forward the main stress" (p.185 - 186)\(^{ii}\), to which I would add "but not the secondary stress". The existence of secondary stress is most strikingly revealed by its neglect in the pronunciation of students who have been taught that stress falls on penultimate syllables only, in derivations such as /slyhanba > slyhanblalsa/ (we see > we see clearly) and /in'koal > in'khoala/ (chief > chief's wife), and in expressions such as /uphambhi/ (where do you come from?), /bfunhi/ (what do they want?), /shalaNybo/ (he who speaks), and in polysyllabic stem words such as /sakabemba/ (work), /mabhabtho/ (soil), /manebl/ (run!).

(iv) The syllables marked by root stress are not always historically root syllables. The initial syllable of the adverb /khon/ is historically a concord, but the pronunciation /khon/ instead of /*khon/ shows that it is now the root. The pronunciations of /manj+ ká/ (now) as /mánjóká/ (final stress)\(^{ii}\) or /mánjóká/ (penultimate stress) indicate that /ma/ is regarded as the first syllable of the root and not as a derivative prefix. The pronunciations of /ná'mphla nja/ (today) as /ná'mphla/ (final stress)\(^{ii}\) or /ná'mphla/ (penultimate stress)\(^{i}\) indicate that /ma/ is regarded as the first syllable of the root and not as an inflectional prefix.

(v) Secondary stress has less prominence than primary stress. Doke \(^{ii}\) mentions "half length and secondary stress" (p.180) in the penultimate syllables of words within phrases, e.g. /slhón/ in'kosa/ (we see the chief), which I would regard as primary stress superimposed upon secondary stress without penultimate length, and "secondary stress not necessarily involving length" (p.183) in the

---

1 Also note the alternative pronunciations /leyonja, leyonba/ (that dog, that hut, with penultimate stress) and /leyke, leyba/ (with primary stress on "le" and secondary stress on the root).

2 As in rhetorical introduction: "and so now", "and so today".

3 Or /ná'mphla/.
root syllables of words with derivative suffixes, e.g. /slyəʊənəlsəʃə/ (we see clearly), which I would regard as secondary stress also. The example /aləʊənəlsə/ (we see the chief clearly) illustrates (from left to right) root stress separately, word stress separately, and coincidentally root stress, word stress, and penultimate length. Doke draws attention to the interrelationship between length and stress which confuses the issue, but it is apparent that root stress has less prominence than word stress.

(vi) It is difficult to detect secondary stress when it occurs immediately before primary stress, e.g. /bθəʊənə: fəˈkəlsə/ (they have seen the chief) and /bθəʊənənə/ (they have seen him). When the root syllable is further from the syllable of primary stress its stress becomes more apparent, e.g. /bθəʊənəsə: fəˈkəlsə/ (they have shown the chief) and /bθəʊənənəfələnə/ (they have shown him). It is noteworthy that Doke never shows secondary stress on syllables immediately preceding penultimate syllables.

(vii) When secondary stress occurs immediately after primary stress in final root syllables, it tends to disappear completely. With words having disyllabic stems, primary and secondary stress coincide, but with words having monosyllabic stems, the root syllable is final and subject to final elision. Primary word stress is marked by word division, but secondary root stress is not indicated in this study.

2.5.3. Intonation

(i) Lanham distinguishes between "checkered" and "uncheckered" length (p.159). There are two types of checkered length, inherent morphological length and imposed syntactical length, separated by a feature of placement. There are also two types of uncheckered length, also separated by a feature of placement. Unlike Lanham I regard uncheckered length as nondistinctive in itself but as a constituent of intonational phonemes whose main constituent is pause.

(ii) Another type of uncheckered length is sometimes imposed upon syllables already characterised by checkered length, either penultimate imposed or ultimate inherent. This is an exaggeration due to "emotional overlay" and it is commonest with third position demonstratives, e.g. /nɑːzəlyə:/ (there they are over there) > /nɑːzəlyədə/ (there they are over there) - South African English
indicates distance in the same way). However, I have excluded "emotional overlay" from this study.

(iii) The overall intonation of the Zulu sentence is "downdrift": the tonal level declines, flowing from high at the beginning of the sentence to low at the end. This "downdrift" is not distinctive; it is the intonational phonemes at the end of the sentence that are distinctive. The constituents of these phonemes are pause, length, pitch, tempo, and "finality" in various combinations. Pause is the only constituent that occurs in all intonational phonemes. The intonational phonemes are as follows:

A. Hesitation Intonation / --- /

This phoneme corresponds to "umming and arring" in English. Its main constituent is pause, as in English, and this pause may be filled by unchecked length in the same way as in English it may be filled by "ums" and "arzs". There is also a pitch constituent consisting of a tonal change from low to high, which naturally affects low tones only. The placement of this phoneme is in the final syllable of syntax units indicated by the phrase /+, e.g. /lsithelo + -- siyafunukhi kithi sakh +/ (the fruits -- are required from us all), where /lsithelo+ > lsithelo+ -- --1, but it occasionally coincides with inherent final length, without imposed penultimate length e.g. /lsithelo lb:alya: -- -- siyafunukhi +/ (those fruits yonder -- -- are required), where /lb:alya:> lb:alya: -- --/, for penultimate length cannot occur with these words.

B. Statement Intonation /.

The main constituent of this phoneme is pause; it also has the constituent of unchecked length and a pitch constituent consisting of the falling of tone on the penultimate syllable and the lowering of tone on the ultimate syllable. This constituent is always realised: falling tones fall further and low tones are lower11. I use Guthrie's term, "final cadence"13, to refer to the combination of these constituents of length and pitch. The placement of the length feature

1 I am indebted to Lanham for this example.
ii The example of /ln'k'lo > ln'k'lo +/ (ox) seems to illustrate the effects of this pitch constituent perfectly, but in fact /ln'k'lo/ is conditioned by /+/ and not by /+. It is a case of substitution of tonal allomorph /H+ > H+L+.
is in the penultimate syllable of syntax units indicated by the phoneme /+/, where it coincides with penultimate length and results in extra vowel length. When a statement ends in a word with which the phoneme /+/ cannot occur, only the pitch constituent of final cadence is realised and then only in the final syllable. This phoneme marks the end of a sentence which is then followed by a new sentence or by no sentence, a feature described as "finality", the termination of "downdrift".

C. Question Intonation /?/

Only questions without interrogative words employ this intonation; otherwise the statement intonation is used, the interrogative words being sufficient to indicate the question. This phoneme also has pause as its main constituent but not the constituents of length and pitch comprising final cadence. Thus the presence of final cadence signals statements and questions with interrogative words, and its absence signals questions without interrogative words. This phoneme also has the constituent of tempo in which a faster speed of speech is used together with a higher pitch throughout the sentence, the latter being an effect of the former. This constituent covers the whole sentence and lessens the effect of "downdrift". This phoneme is also characterised by the feature of "finality".

D. Exclamation Intonation /!/!

This phoneme has the constituents of both statements and questions: pause, length and pitch (final cadence, the characteristic of statements), tempo (the characteristic of questions), and also the feature of "finality". There is sometimes a dramatic drop in tonal level in the penultimate syllable via final cadence. Questions with interrogative words often use this intonation, for questions are often more exclamatory than statements.

E. Comma Intonation /,/

Whereas /./, /?/, /!/ demarcate the boundaries of sentences, the phoneme /,/ demarcates the boundaries of clauses. It therefore does not have the feature of "finality", nor does it have the feature of final cadence. Its only constituent is pause.

Note:

(a) These five phonemes do not pretend to be a complete statement of the intonational phonemes of Zulu. The stress which is
sometimes apparent on a final syllable is emphatic stress due to "emotional overlay", possibly to be treated as a constituent of an intonational phoneme or of three further intonations, emphatic statement, emphatic question, emphatic exclamation (see footnote under 2.5.2.). It is sometimes accompanied by a raising of the tone.

(b) These intonational phonemes occur not only in the Nguni languages but also in the Suthu languages, as recorded by Tucker 14: "in a normal statement the penultimate syllable is lengthened" but "in a question the penultimate syllable is not lengthened" - "very often this shortening of the penultimate syllable is the only distinction between a question and a statement". Letele 15 explicitly states that length occurs on the penultimate syllable of a sentence, but that "when interrogative words are not used, absence of length on the penultimate syllable distinguishes interrogative sentences from non-interrogative sentences" (p.6). Tucker also writes that "the long penultimate syllable of a normal statement has a falling tone", and that in hesitation "the final syllable of the word is lengthened". Penultimate length never occurs in the middle of a sentence in Suthu, unlike imposed syntactical length in Nguni with which intonational length is superimposed in statements.

2.5.4. Juncture

Phonemes that demarcate as opposed to phonemes that differentiate are conventionally called junctures. Thus the phoneme /-/ (inherent morphological length) and tonal phonemes differentiate in the same way as segmental phonemes, whereas the phoneme /+/ (imposed syntactical length) and intonational phonemes demarcate by signalling the boundaries between certain syntactical units. The phoneme /+/ marks phrases, the phoneme /:/ clauses, and the phonemes /:/, /?:, /1/, different types of sentences. The marking of words by the juncture phoneme of primary stress is acceptable to Doke ("in each word there is one and only one main stress, usually on the penultimate syllable", p.189) 11 but not to Lanham ("the word is phonologically definable only to a very limited extent", p.163) 12. He mentions penultimate length, for in slow speech all words may be marked by it, but this is a distortion; and even so there are words which cannot take it. He mentions open transition, for in slow speech again all words may be marked by it, but again this is a
distortion. He concludes that although words are units readily identified by native speakers, they are identified grammatically rather than phonologically. He does not consider stress because he regards it as nondistinctive, whereas I suggest that it is distinctive and the marker of the word as a phonological unit.

Just as phonemes that differentiate may be described in terms of clusters of distinctive features, so may phonemes that demarcate or juncture phonemes. The pattern of contrasts of suprasegmental juncture phonemes is as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Distinctive Features</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Unit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pause</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pitch</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tempo</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>juncture</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+        +  +  -  -</td>
<td>A. Hesitation</td>
<td>/---/</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+        +  -  -  +</td>
<td>B. Statement</td>
<td>/+/-</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+        -  -  +  +</td>
<td>C. Question</td>
<td>/+/-</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+        +  +  +  +</td>
<td>D. Exclamation</td>
<td>/+/-</td>
<td>sentence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+        -  -  -  -</td>
<td>E. Comma</td>
<td>/+/-</td>
<td>clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-        +  -  -  -</td>
<td>Penultimate length</td>
<td>/+/-</td>
<td>phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-        -  -  -  +</td>
<td>Primary stress</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>word</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:
(a) Stress is irrelevant except as word stress. The slight vowel lengthening that stress conditions is not shown as a distinctive feature.
(b) Pause is the essential constituent of intonational phonemes, but the phonemes of penultimate length and primary stress demarcate without the use of pause.
(c) The length feature of the phoneme of penultimate length is checked, whereas that of the intonational phonemes is unchecked. All junctural length is imposed.
(d) The length feature of /---/ is different in placement from that of /+/- and /+/, the former being ultimate and the latter penultimate.
The pitch feature of /—/ is different in its effect from that of /./ and /l/, the former causing the ultimate tone to change from low to high and the latter causing the penultimate tone to fall and the ultimate tone to lower.

2.5.5. Transition

The normal transition between words in Zulu is close transition. The pause constituent of intonational phonemes brings about a break in close transition, which is juncturally and structurally significant. Pause is not a constituent of the juncture phoneme of phrases (penultimate length), nor of the juncture phoneme of words (primary stress), and close transition maintains.

There is nothing to note with regard to close transition unless there is a juxtaposition of vowels at the word-boundary. If the vowels are the same the transition is easily effected, e.g. /amada:da am'khulu+/ (important men), where the vowels tend to coalesce. If they are different the transition is effected via a hardly discernible semivowel glide, /y/-like between /a/ and the front vowels and /w/-like between /a/ and the back vowels, e.g. /ɓiaɓaɓat (y)ɓiaɓaɓh+/ (important women) and /ɓiaɓaɓ (w)ɓiaɓaɓh+/ (important people). In normal speech final vowels are elided, even across phrase boundaries but not across clause or sentence boundaries because of pause.

Open transition occurs nondistinctively as a concomitant of the pause constituent of intonational phonemes. Lanham records its occurrence between demonstratives and nouns when the former precede the latter not delimitatively as usual, e.g. /1ɓ'mamth/ (this person), but substantively in apposition, e.g. /1ɓ ɓamth/ (this one, the person). Nevertheless I would consider the normal pronunciation to be in close transition, e.g. /1ɓ (w)ɓamth/.

Open transition does occur distinctively, however, before and after ideophones, e.g. /ɓiaɓhlelə ɓiaɓth "ad" am'linə/ (they were sitting absolutely quiet in the room). Thus the ideophone is set apart by having a juncture of its own.
REFERENCES

1. Doke
   The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. 1926.

2. Lanham
   The Comparative Phonology of Nguni. 1960.
   (All references in this chapter are to this work).

3. Jakobson, Fant and Halle

4. Jakobson and Halle

5. Tucker

6. Rycroft
   (p. 68, footnote 1).

7. Firth

8. Robins

9. Pike
   Tone Languages. 1948.

10. Beuchat
    (p. 145, footnote).

11. Doke
    The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. (op. cit.).
    These observations are also incorporated into the Textbook of Zulu Grammar.

12. Lanham
    Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op. cit).

13. Guthrie
    This term was used by Professor Guthrie in lectures at the School of Oriental and African Studies.

14. Tucker
    The Comparative Phonetics of the Suthu-Tswana Group of Bantu Languages. 1929. Chapter XIII.

15. Letele
    The Role of Tone in the Southern Sotho language. 1955.
3.1. Historical Introduction

The first scientific study of tonal structure in Nguni languages was undertaken by Beach. In an article entitled "The Science of Tonetics" he makes a number of pertinent and accurate comments. He points out the complex interrelationship in Nguni languages between the elements of phone, tone, stress, length; he notices the influence of phones on tones, he notices the influence of tone on length ("a falling tone takes more time to intone" than a level tone), and he remarks that stress is so closely bound to length, tone and phone, that "its separate analysis is a most difficult if not impossible task", as I have found indeed (see 2.5.2.). With regard to tone in particular, he states that "it is the relative pitch that is important and not the absolute pitch", a statement which later investigators have often reiterated. He sees that tones are arranged into tonemes just as phones are arranged into phonemes, so that the tonetic quality of a tone depends first and foremost on the toneme to which it belongs; it also depends, as he points out, on the phones with which the tone occurs, the context of tones, and the position of the word in the sentence. In this study it is still necessary to consider the effects of consonantal influence, tonal assimilation, and final cadence. Beach sets up three tonemes for Xhosa, the high and the low and the high-to-low falling toneme, and a "Table of Xhosa tonemes with rules for the occurrence of their principal members", i.e. allotones. He shows that most variations of the tonemic norm are due to consonantal influence. As Tucker says, "It was he who discovered the secret of the toneme in Xhosa, and the extraordinary influence exercised by the 'breathy' sounds". Tucker briefly sets out Beach's analysis and system of tone-marking, which is the only specific account in existence, for Beach himself never published the results of his research on Xhosa tonetics and tonology.

Doke's "The Phonetics of the Zulu Language" contains a detailed description of Zulu tonetics. Doke establishes nine tones or "tone points", and emphasizes that "it is not the absolute pitch of these tone points that is important, but the relative pitch", an almost exact repetition of Beach's statement. These nine tones
may be reduced on Doke's evidence to three tonemes: no. 1 (the highest) and no. 9 (the lowest) may be eliminated altogether, as the former is an emphatic tone due to "emotional overlay" and the latter occurs only at the end of the sentence due to final cadence; nos. 2 and 3 belong to the high toneme (Doke notes that they are "commonly interchangeable"), and nos. 6 ("the first of the low tones"), 7 and 8 belong to the low toneme; nos. 4 and 5 are not attributable to either of these two tonemes on Doke's evidence, and therefore could comprise a mid toneme. On my evidence, however, the former belongs to the high toneme and the latter to the low toneme. Doke makes a statement of great insight when he writes, "We might liken the level tones to pure vowels, the rising and falling tones to diphthongs, and the rising-falling tones to triphthongs" (p. 199), for he indicates that tonal glides are to be interpreted as clusters of tonemes and not as tonemes in themselves. He himself does not attempt to set up tonemes as he considers that the advantage of simplicity resulting from the reduction of tones to tonemes would be outweighed by the disadvantage of complexity resulting from the number of tonological rules necessary to account for allotonic variation. Further research has shown that this is not the case: the reduction to tonemes enormously simplifies the description of Zulu tonology (in fact it is possible only in terms of tonemes), and the tonological rules are not as numerous as Doke expected.

In my master's thesis I set up three tonemes, the high toneme having six allotones, the low toneme having four allotones, and the high-to-low falling toneme having two allotones, with nine factors to account for allotonic variation. This analysis was published in summary form. In this thesis I reduce the tonemes from three to two by the elimination of the high-to-low falling toneme as a toneme cluster: the high toneme with four allotones, eliminating the mid allotone in terms of tonal downstep and the extra high allotone in terms of tonal upstep, and the low toneme with four allotones again; and I reduce the conditioning factors from nine to three, for further research has led to simplification. In the matter of tonemes I have come to the same conclusion for Zulu as Lanham for Xhosa. In his first analysis of Xhosa tonology he set up the same three tonemes, which in his final analysis he reduces by the elimination of the high-to-low falling toneme.

Lanham's excellent comparative study contains two chapters dealing specifically with tonology. In Chapter 6, "The Tonemes
of Xhosa", he sets up the two tonemes of Xhosa and discusses the "environmental influences" giving rise to allotonic variation.

Here he deals with the influence of depressor consonants or "depressors" (a term I propose to adopt), the tonal assimilation of low tonemes, "the phenomenon of the tonal downstep" and "the crescendo of high tonemes in sequence" which I would regard as "the phenomenon of the tonal upstep". Tonal upsteps are as significant as tonal downsteps, and both occur either overtly or covertly between high tonemes in sequence. In my analysis of Zulu tonology, I phonemize covert upsteps as well as covert downsteps. Lanham discusses "unpredictable downsteps" in detail and sets up the phoneme of "step juncture" to account for this phenomenon, but he regards "unpredictable upsteps" as predictable in terms of "the crescendo of high tonemes in sequence". I do not agree with him here. I also query his omission of final cadence from the "environmental influences", for in Zulu it is certainly a conditioning factor of allotonic variation. In Chapter 7, "Comparison of Nguni Tonomic Systems", he discusses two points in detail, toneme displacement and toneme clustering. These processes occur in Zulu but not in Xhosa, which accounts for most of the differences in tonal structure between the two languages. In Zulu, falling tones arise as a result of the displacement of high tonemes onto syllables bearing low tonemes, and this determines the interpretation of all falling tones as toneme clusters. In Xhosa there is no reason not to interpret falling tones in terms of a third toneme; it is because of the evidence of Zulu that Lanham does not do so. Tonal displacement is brought about by depressors, and where it cannot occur (as, for instance, onto final syllables), rising tones result. In Zulu the interpretation of rising tones as due to the influence of depressors is complicated by the fact that there are rising tones without depressors in the nominal extra prefixes. Here Lanham postulates inherent low tonemes in the extra prefixes and interprets these rising tones as toneme clusters; this determines the interpretation of all rising tones as toneme clusters. I prefer to postulate depressors with latent "heavy voice" quality in the extra prefixes and interpret all rising tones as allotones of the high toneme. Neither of these postulations is necessary in Xhosa where there are no rising tones without depressors. Lanham's consideration of these differences in tonal structure is thorough and very valuable.

Rycroft is another investigator into the tonal structure of Zulu. Although he has no publication relating to the total
system, he makes many useful observations in the course of his
treatment of particular aspects of it. These observations relate
to downdrift intonation, tonal steps, final cadence, and consonantal
influence, all of which are important factors in the establish-
ment of tonemes. Rycroft writes in terms of "the three tonal cate-
gories, H, HL, L," but does not state that they are tonemes nor
whether HL is a toneme in itself or a cluster of tonemes. His
symbolization suggests, however, that there are two tonemes, H and
L, with a toneme cluster HL. He has no toneme cluster LH, regard-
ing all rising tones as allotones of the high toneme due to depressors.
To make his treatment watertight, he postulates the extra prefixes
/ma-/ (conjunctive) and /v y w/ (agentive) as /nha-/ and /h/-
respectively, with the observation that the latter "conventionally
may be either left unwritten or written as y (before i) or w (before
u)". I also adopt this interpretation of rising tones.

In his description of Zulu tonetics Doke demonstrates the ways
in which tone is significant in Zulu. It is significant semanti-
cally (I would say lexically) in pairs of phonetically identical
words such as /bmat/ (corn) and /bmat/ (breasts), /thand/ (wind round) and /thand/ (like, love), /min/ (myself) and /min/ (here you are); it is significant grammatically in pairs of phonetically identical words such as /dmint/ (a person) and /dmint/ (by a person), /ngihlanza/ (I wash - independent tense) and
/ngihlanza/ (I wash - dependent tense); it is also significant in
indicating emotions such as sarcasm and surprise, which is a matter
of intonation rather than of tone, however, due to the effect
of "emotional overlay". Doke gives long lists of words in
illustration of the lexical and grammatical significance of tone,
and this is useful material. Doke also writes a note on "the in-
fluence of phones on tone", but does not discuss the point in detail.
Although he subsequently gives plentiful illustrations of consonantal
influence in his analysis of "sequences of tones", he gives no
eamples of the displacement of high tones by depressor consonants
and does not mention it. As far as I know, I was the first to de-
scribe tonal displacement in Zulu together with other rules of morpho-
tonemic change.

3.2. Tonemes

3.2.1. The intonational segment

Suprasegmental features cannot be identified in terms of absolute
phonetic qualities, and this is particularly true of tone. Pike's
"special practical problems arising from the application of the principles of phonemic analysis to tonal phonemes" are due to this fact: "the relative nature of significant pitch units". The main problem is that the criterion of phonetic identity is inapplicable in the setting up of tonemes, with the result that there is wholesale overlapping between tonemes which would not and could not be admitted in the case of phonemes. Furthermore, the criterion of contrastive distribution is applicable only in a particular phonemic environment. This qualification is necessary in Zulu because of the overall downdrift intonation of the sentence. If it were not for the factor of intonation, there would be no need to delimit the phonetic environment and the significant contrasts between tonemes would be maintained throughout the sentence. This is actually the case in the recitation of the traditional "izibongo" or praise-poems, where the normal downdrift intonation is suspended.

In a nontonal language the suspension of intonation eliminates all tonal distinctions, but in a tonal language it renders the distinctions between tonemes significant at the syllable level clearly apparent. In normal speech, however, it is necessary to take intonation into account. Thus, in the absence of phonetic identity, the criterion of contrastive distribution assumes paramount importance, but it is applicable only in a particular phonetic environment.

What is this phonetic environment? Because of the downdrift intonation of the sentence which causes high tonemes at the end to be lower in pitch than high tonemes and even than low tonemes at the beginning, there is obviously some smaller unit than the sentence within which the tonemes contrast significantly with one another. This unit is the intonational segment between tonal steps, either between upsteps or between downsteps. The high-low sequence represents a tonal downstep and the low-high sequence a tonal upstep. The former is always greater than the latter, due to the influence of downdrift intonation. There are two interpretations of this fact, either that tonal downsteps are due to the high-low toneme contrast together with an element of downdrift intonation which lowers the low toneme, whereas tonal upsteps are due to the low-high toneme contrast alone, or that tonal upsteps are due to the low-high toneme contrast together with an element of downdrift intonation which lowers the high toneme, whereas tonal downsteps are due to the high-low toneme contrast alone. If we accept the former interpretation, we take the intonation segment between downsteps as the unit, thereby eliminating the factor of intonation. In the sequence LHLHL, these
units are then LH-LH-L, the first unit being on a higher tonal level than the second, and the second than the third. If we accept the latter interpretation, we take the intonational segment between upsteps as the unit, and in the same sequence these units are then L-HL-HL. This proves to be the better interpretation in practice, not only because it often gives a lesser number of intonational segments but also because the segmentation is not affected by the final elision of vowels or by the tonal assimilation of low tonemes to high tonemes. In the sequence HLHLLLHLLL illustrated by the sentence /ilsinsizwa zililetha amagqambe/ (the young men are bringing the hoes - in slow speech), the first interpretation gives five segments (H/LH/LH/HL/HL) to the latter's four (HL/HL/HL/HL/HL). On final elision in normal speech, /ilsinsizwa zililetha' amagqambe/, the first segmentation is affected (H/LH/LH/HL/HL) but not the second (HL/HL/HL/HL/HL). Here final elision brings about a covert tonal upstep. In the sequence HLHLLLHLLL illustrated by the sentence /izinsiswa ziletha amagqambe/ (these old men, they have arrived - in slow speech), the first interpretation again gives five segments (H/LH/LH/HL/HL/HL) to the latter's four (HL/HL/HL/HL). On tonal assimilation in normal speech, /isinsiza ziletha' amagqambe/, the first segmentation is again affected (H/LH/LH/HL/HL) but not the second (HL/HL/HL/HL). In the sequence LHHHL illustrated by the word /izinsiza mgeni/ (among the cattle), the two interpretations give the segmentations LHHHL and LLHHL respectively. Here there is a covert tonal downstep brought about by tonal displacement. In a context of high tonemes, the initial low toneme may be assimilated but not the toneme of the depressor syllable. The first interpretation now gives four instead of three intonational segments (H/LH/HH/HH), but the latter segmentation remains the same (HL/HH/HH). I therefore adopt the latter interpretation and regard the intonational segment between tonal upsteps as the unit within which significant pitch contrasts operate, and as the "particular phonetic environment" within which the criterion of contrastive distribution is applicable.

3.2.2. Phonetic environment

The following three factors of phonetic environment are relevant to the setting up of tonemes. The first factor (tonal steps)

---

1 Lanham refers to this unit as "tonal step", but this term is unsatisfactory because of the ambiguity of the word "step". It indicates the stepping up and the stepping down as well as the level step in between. Hence my use of the term "intonational segment" to refer to the level step, as distinct from the term "tonal step" to refer to the stepping up (upstep) and the stepping down (downstep).
relates to the unit of the intonational segment, the establishment of which eliminates the effect of downdrift intonation. This factor does not account for allotonic variation; it accounts for mid tones and extra high tones as high tonemes in subsequent intonational segments, on downstepped and upstepped tonal levels respectively. The other two factors account for allotonic variations.

3.2.2.1. Tonal steps

Tonal steps may be either downsteps to an intonational segment on a lower tonal level or upsteps to an intonational segment on a higher tonal level.

3.2.2.1.1. Tonal downsteps

Tonal downsteps are marked by the high-low tonal sequence. Where a low toneme becomes by tonal assimilation a high toneme, the overt downstep as in / ámb'.qhawa/ (warriors) and / tíqhawa/ (warrior) becomes covert as in / ámb'.qhawa/ and / tíqhawa/. These mid tones are not to be attributed to a mid toneme but to the high toneme in a subsequent intonational segment. The covert downstep is due to the disappearance of a low toneme and therefore must be marked as phonemic in itself, which is done thus: / ámb'.qhawa/ and / tíqhawa/. The disappearance of a low toneme is sometimes due to tonal displacement, e.g. / ámb'.qhawa > nhambah'.qhawa/ (with warriors), / báhk'ómání < *bhínk'ómání/ (amongst the cattle). Covert downsteps between high tonemes in sequence are not always due to the disappearance of an intervening low toneme. Such downsteps occur with nouns having monosyllabic prefixes, e.g. nouns of class 9: / fín'asáwa/ (young man), / fín'kósl ~ ín'kósl + / (chief)\(^1\). Such downsteps also occur with self-standing possessive pronouns, e.g. / 6'.qáná/, / 6'.gáná/, / 6'.úáná/ ("mine" in different nominal classes), with inflected demonstratives, e.g. / ká:lábá/, / ká:lábá, kálábá: / ("to these ones" in different nominal classes), with inflected adverbs, e.g. / bá'láphá ~ bá'lálá: / (they are here), and with verbs in various inflections, e.g. / ká:léléthá (to bring), / ká:léléthálá:/ (not to bring it).

The grammatical function of the covert tonal downstep is to mark the boundary of the tonal morpheme of the final couplet

---

\(^1\) The monosyllabic prefix may be due to historical elision: / *ini > *íq > íN/.
(couple of syllables), where it occurs between two high tonemes. The final tonal morpheme is the most significant unit in Zulu tonal morphology, as it determines the tone classes of words. It normally covers two syllables, but even when it covers a single syllable as in monosyllabic words, it is still marked by the covert tonal downstep when these words are inflected, e.g. /k'ñè/: (to this one), /d'fu/: (they are here), cf. /'ñè/: (we are here).

When inflected monosyllabic demonstratives are prefixed to certain nouns, two covert tonal downsteps occur successively, one to mark the final tonal morpheme of the demonstrative and one to mark the final tonal morpheme of the noun, e.g. /hèthi'mù, d'lem'khòntè/ (the sharpness of these spears).

Lanham records "unpredictable downstep" in Xhosa (p.66-68) and in the other Nguni languages (p.119-120), and Tucker records it in the Suthu languages (p.101). It is also recorded further afield, by Carter in Plateau Tonga as "tone-slip" between high tones, by Knappert in Shona and other languages as "tone deflection", and by Kühler-Meyer in several languages, who writes, "Shambala has two tonemes, high and low, with a mid-tone variant of the high toneme", which is apparently the high toneme on a downstepped intonational segment. It is therefore a widespread phenomenon in Bantu languages.

3.2.2.1.2. Tonal upsteps

Tonal upsteps are marked by the low-high tonal sequence. Where a low toneme becomes by tonal assimilation a high toneme, the overt upstep as in /d'fánènà/ (small boys) becomes covert as in /d'fánènà/. These extra high tones are not to be attributed to an extra high toneme, but to the high toneme in a subsequent intonational segment. The covert upstep is due to the disappearance of a low toneme and therefore must be marked as phonemic in itself, which is done thus: /d'fánènà/. Covert upsteps between high tonemes in sequence are not always due to the disappearance of an intervening low toneme. Multiple inflection of nominals by extra prefixes provides examples of such upsteps: /má:kù'gómù/ (a person of (at) that kraal), /lèngòb ñ'jèngòlèyèb ~ ñ'jèngòla'léyèb/ (this blanket is like that one - the latter alternative is the Natal Coast dialect where tonal displacement onto demonstratives is not permitted).
The grammatical function of the covert tonal upstep is to mark the boundary of a tonal morpheme other than a final tonal morpheme, where it occurs between two high tonemes. It is the low-high distinction that tonal steps function to maintain: /s166n a6afana a6ancanel/ (we see the small boys) is normally realized as /s166n' "aM'fan' na68, 'ncan'e+/.

Lanham\textsuperscript{22} regards tonal upsteps between high tonemes as predictable in terms of "the crescendo of high tones in sequence" (p.94 for Xhosa; p.118 for Zulu), but I do not agree with him here. The position with regard to covert upsteps is similar to the position with regard to covert downsteps, and I therefore set up two junctural tonemes, /'/ (downstep) and /'/ (upstep), which contrast significantly with one another. Tucker\textsuperscript{23} records the same situation in the Suthu languages, namely phonemic upsteps as well as phonemic downsteps. The function of these tonal steps in Suthu is to indicate the boundaries between words, whereas in Nguni it is to indicate the boundaries between tonal morphemes. Letele\textsuperscript{24} elaborates on the function of tone in indicating "syntax relations" by classifying the "upstep relations" and the "downstep relations" of nouns and verbs with various parts of speech.

3.2.2.2. Final cadence

The intonational feature of final cadence appears to be as widespread a phenomenon in Bantu languages as downdrift intonation itself. It is more easily eliminated than the latter in the setting up of tonemes because it concerns only the last two syllables of the sentence. It is best to omit these syllables from consideration until the significant tonological units have been established. Final cadence has already been described under the heading of Intonation (see 2.5.3.) as a constituent of the phoneme of statement intonation. In Zulu the effect of final cadence on the ultimate syllable is a lowering of tone, giving an extra low allotone of the low toneme and a lowered high allotone of the high toneme, and on the penultimate syllable the effect is to give falling allotones of both the high and the low tonemes. The falling allotone of the high toneme is different from the high-to-low falling tone in that it does not fall from high to low but from high to mid, and the falling allotone of the low toneme is different in that it falls from mid to low. When the low toneme is raised initially by tonal assimilation from low to high, the allotone falls from high to low, but it is still distinct from the
high-to-low falling tone in that it moves more rapidly from high to low. As Rycroft points out, it is not sufficient to describe these tones in terms of their initial and final pitches only. The following examples show the effects of final cadence:

/ɪn'sɪzɪm+/. (young man). The high-to-mid falling allotone of the high toneme, followed by the extra low allotone of the low toneme.

/ɪn'tʊsɪ+/. (chief). The high-to-low falling tone falls further in final cadence; it falls to low with /+/ but to extra low with /+.+

/ɪn'dʊmb+/. (or (bird). The mid-to-low falling allotone of the low toneme, or the high-to-low rapidly falling allotone due to the combined influence of tonal assimilation and final cadence.

/ɪn'dʊmb+/. (or (beast). The same allotones, followed by the lowered high allotone of the high toneme.

/ɪntʊmbf+/. (or (girl). The same allotones, but the final syllable contains a depressor.

/ɪn'ɡɑːnd+/. (child). The tone on the penultimate syllable shows the allotones that arise in final cadence with high toned depressor syllables.

/ɪn'vʊlær/. (rain). That tone on the penultimate syllable shows the allotones that arise in final cadence with high toned depressor syllables.

/ɪndɪdɪ+. (man). The tone on the penultimate syllable shows the allotones that arise in final cadence with low toned depressor syllables.

There is a further effect of final cadence: the tendency towards devocalization of final vowels, which automatically brings about detonalization of final vowels, e.g. /bɑːndɪs+/. (minister), /bɑːndɪn+/. (family head). Doke writes that "the final vowel is never actually lost --- (but that) this tendency is much more liable to become complete with the nasals," especially in address, e.g. /bɑːnɪs+. (sir!).
3.2.2.3. Consonantal influence

The influence of phones on tones has been noticed and discussed by all investigators of Nguni tonal systems: Beach, Tucker, Doke, Lanham, Rycroft, and myself, in particular the lowering effect of depressors. This phenomenon seems to be peculiar to the Nguni languages within Southern Bantu, for it is not reported in the Suthu or the Shona languages, nor in Venda by Westphal, nor in Tsonga by Beachnt. However, it is not limited to the Nguni languages within the wider field of Bantu, for Carter reports it in Plateau Tonga; nor to Bantu itself, for Welmers reports it in Kpelle, a Liberian language. These scholars attribute the influence of depressors to inherent low tonemes. Carter writes that the consonants are lower in pitch than preceding or following vowels, so that preceding high tones become falling tones and following high tones become rising tones. Welmers transcribes /b, d, g, v, z/ as /p, t, k, f, s/, for it is unnecessary to indicate both the quality of heavy voice and the low toneme. For this reason Beach comes to the opposite but equally valid conclusion in Xhosa, and decides "to differentiate between the two phones thereby causing the two tones to become members of the same toneme, rather than to differentiate between the two tones thereby causing the two phones to become members of the same phoneme". This interpretation works well in Xhosa, where depressor syllables bear only low or rising tones but not high tones, and where rising tones occur only with depressor syllables. Tucker adopts this interpretation for the Nguni languages in general, but as Lanham points out, it is directly applicable only in Xhosa, for in Zulu, although it is true that depressor syllables bear only low or rising tones, it is not true that rising tones occur only with depressor syllables. We cannot interpret rising tones sometimes as allotones conditioned by depressors and sometimes as tonemes in themselves or as toneme clusters. We must interpret rising tones uniformly, either as the former or as the latter. There are arguments in favour of both interpretations (see 3.2.3.2. below), but I adopt the interpretation which treats all rising tones as allotones of the high toneme conditioned by depressors. With regard to the nominal extra prefixes, this interpretation involves the postulation of depressors whose "heavy voice" quality is often latent.

The lowering effect of depressors is apparent not only with high tones but also with low tones, where it conditions low tone allotones of the low toneme. In the absence of depressors mid tones occur,
Beach and Tucker regard these mid tones as due to the influence of nondepressor consonants, and Lanham as due to the tonal assimilation of low tones in a context of high tones. I regard them as the norm, and the low allotones as due to depressor influence. The influence of depressors is also discernible in nondepressor syllables adjacent to depressor syllables. With high-toned nondepressor syllables slightly falling or rising or rising-falling tones may occur, e.g. /inyambazl/ (tear), /inyambazl/ or (tears), /njelingaml/ (he is like me).

With low-toned nondepressor syllables low allotones may occur instead of mid allotones, e.g. /bylbybnegh/ or (they did not write it). This is always so in subsequent nondepressor syllables, e.g. /bylbybnegh/ (they did not see them), of /bylbybnegh/ and /bylbybnegh/ above, where both syllables are depressor (/ziba/) and nondepressor (/y160/) respectively.

The effects of consonantal influence are outstandingly evident in the recitation of praise-poems, as Rycroft's transcriptions show so well. In the absence of the normal downdrift intonation, "eulogistic recitation" employs only three levels of pitch throughout, apart from final cadence. These pitches are high (representing the high toneme), mid (a semitone lower, representing the mid allotone of the low toneme), and low (three semitones lower, representing the low allotone of the low toneme, which is used only with depressor syllables).

E.g. an extract from the praises of Shaka:

/InShakk naElYaása6' dělthi něb Shákh,
(--- ------ )

/InShakk kwákylnkósf yása6bólóbn1.
(--- ------ ------ )

Note that /yi/ in /kwákylnkósf/ is not patently a depressor syllable and yet it bears the low pitch characteristic of depressor syllables, which corroborates the postulation of depressors with latent "heavy voice" quality.

1 Or (---) due to tonal assimilation of /yi/.

ii Or (---) due to tonal assimilation of /yi/.
Consonantal influence by depressors operates in conjunction with final cadence to give rising high-to-mid falling allotones of the high toneme and low-to-low (extra low) falling allotones of the low toneme on the penultimate syllable. In the absence of depressors the former becomes the high-to-mid falling allotone and the latter the mid-to-low falling allotone (see examples under Final cadence).

The full list of depressor consonants is as follows:- b, d, j, g; v, z, hh; go, qa, gx; ngo (nch), ngq (ngh), ngx (nxh); wh, lh, yh; mh, nh, nyh (ph), ngh (nh). The last seven consonants are rare in the standard dialect, but although the phonal feature may not be present the tonal feature that it conditions is always present. These consonants occur generally only in the nominal extra prefixes, e.g. agentive nouns:

/hin'ndoda' - yin'ndoda'/ (-.) (by a man), cf. /in'ndoda/ (-.) (a man),

/hin'muntha' - yin'muntha'/ (-.) (by a person), cf. /in'muntha/ (-.) (a person), showing the allotonic effects with high and low tonemes respectively. In the absence of the consonant itself (the "zero allomorph" of the agentive prefix), the rising allotone of the high toneme and the low allotone of the low toneme assume great structural significance. This structural significance we must attribute to the consonant and not to the allotone that it conditions.

3.2.3. Tonal glides

There are two types of tonal glides in Zulu, up-glides or rising tones and down-glides or falling tones. They may be interpreted either as allotones or as tonemes or as toneme clusters. Lanham considers that whereas rising tones may be interpreted as allotones in Xhosa, they must be interpreted as toneme clusters in Zulu, and that whereas falling tones may be interpreted as tonemes in Xhosa, they must be interpreted as toneme clusters in Zulu. He therefore interprets all tonal glides as toneme clusters in Zulu. I interpret falling tones as toneme clusters and rising tones as allotones of the high toneme.

3.2.3.1. Falling tones

Under Final cadence (3.2.2.2.) I showed the high-to-mid falling tone as an allotone of the high toneme and the mid-to-low falling tone as an allotone of the low toneme. I also showed the high-to-low rapidly falling tone as an allotone of the low toneme due to the combined influence of tonal assimilation and final cadence. I have
not yet accounted for the high-to-low falling tone in which the glide represents the high and the low pitch registers more or less equally. It is not an allotone conditioned by final cadence for it occurs with or without final cadence. Its essential concomitant is vowel length, either inherent /ː/ length or imposed /+/ length, but it is not an allotone conditioned by vowel length for high level and low level tones also occur with vowel length. Its interpretation as a tone in itself is a possibility to be considered. Beach sets up a falling tone in Xhosa 36, and so did Lanham in his first analysis 37. Tucker sets up a falling tone for all the Nguni languages 38, and so did I for Zulu in my first analysis 39. This interpretation is not tenable in Zulu, however, for high-to-low falling tones are seen to arise as a result of the tonal displacement of high tonemes onto syllables bearing low tonemes, brought about by depressors, e.g. /nha + iny País > nhẹny País/ (with a bird), /yhi + fshamb > yhlnt Paísb/ (by string), /wu +管线 > wkh Paísb/ (by father), /fshhlib/ (chair) > /fsh hàib/ (chairs), /ink País/ (beast) > /ink País+/ (cattle).

The clustering of high and low tonemes on a single syllable is also seen to arise as a result of syllable elision, e.g. the contracted noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11, 8 and 10: /iliki País/ (warrior), /izİnd País > fİnd País/ (headmen); and also elsewhere: /66y Paísb > 66 Paísb/ (indefinite future tense), /li:Gay País > (probably) /il País:Gay/ (third position demonstrative suffix), and /66 Paísnib > (possibly) /İ d Paísn/ (present perfect tense suffix). All these falling tones are clearly tone clusters (H + L), and all falling tones are therefore to be interpreted as such even when they cannot be seen to arise as such, e.g. /am Paískh País+ > /am Paískh País/ (chiefs), /izİnk País+/ (oxen), /a Paísh Paísb+/ (we went).

That vowel length is a necessary concomitant of falling tones is shown by the fact that when imposed length is removed according to syntactical rules, the falling tones are replaced by high level or low level tones, e.g. /am Paískh País+ > am Paískh País/ (chiefs), /izİnk País+/ iİnk País/ (oxen). Falling tones appear to be conditioned by vowel length in these examples, but it is the conditioning of tonal allomorphs incorporating falling tones, not the conditioning of falling tones themselves. That falling tones are not conditioned by vowel length is shown by the fact that when they coincide with inherent length, they are frequently replaced by high level tones in normal speech.
The interpretation of falling tones as toneme clusters is supported by Doke's statement relating to Zulu in particular, in which he likens rising and falling tones to diphthongs as opposed to level tones as monophthongs\(^4\), and also by Pike's statement relating to tone languages in general, in which he writes that in a register system of level tones, glides sometimes occur as a result of juxtaposition, and that "if contrasting levels and glides are both found, the glides should be interpreted in terms of level tones"\(^4\).

3.2.3.2. Rising tones

Under Consonantal influence (3.2.2.3.) I indicated that there are two interpretations of rising tones for which the pros and the cons are fairly equally balanced. The first, expounded in detail by Lanham\(^4\), interprets rising tones as toneme clusters. The second, suggested by Rycroft\(^4\), interprets rising tones as allo­ tones of the high toneme. There is a third possibility which involves a methodological mixing of levels, and I would defend it only if its application were so successful as to validate its fundamental invalidity.

(i) Lanham's interpretation is based on the fact that rising tones sometimes occur without depressors. Here they are seen to arise as a result of the prefixing of low tone nominal extra prefixes to high tone noun prefixes in situations where tonal displacement is blocked by depressors,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{nǐ} + \text{Imba} \rightarrow \text{nÌmbh} / \text{(with a man)}, \]
\[ /\text{yǐ} + \text{Imba} \rightarrow \text{ymbh} / \text{(by an axe)}, \]
\[ /\text{nǐ} + \text{inzinsaw} \rightarrow \text{nininsaw} / \text{(with young men)}, \]
\[ /\text{yǐ} + \text{inzinqila} \rightarrow \text{yinzinqila} / \text{(by wagons)}, \]
\[ /\text{nàn} + \text{indza} \rightarrow \text{kinnindza} / \text{(rather than an affair)}^1. \]

The clustering of low and high tonemes on a single syllable is also seen to arise as a result of syllable elision, e.g. the contracted noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11, 8 and 10: /\text{l1khbl} \rightarrow \text{xkhbl} / \text{(old man), /izindng} \rightarrow \text{yndng} / \text{(walls)}. Lanham sees all these

\[ ^1 \text{Note the upstep. The low tone constituent of rising tones does not constitute a downstep.} \]
rising tones as toneme clusters \((L + H > LH)\), and he therefore interprets all rising tones as such even when they cannot be seen to arise as such, e.g. /in'gâne/ (child), /in'dênh/ (headman), /iz'nda6a/ (affairs), /iz'ndônga/ (walls), /mândênd/ (to a man). He attributes to depressors an inherent low toneme to explain these rising tones.

The position relating to rising tones thus appears to be similar to that relating to falling tones. Falling tones are seen as toneme clusters resulting from tonal displacement and rising tones as toneme clusters resulting from the blockage of tonal displacement. Both types of glide are also seen to arise as a result of syllable elision. However, this interpretation overlooks the fact that the great majority of rising tones are undoubtedly due to the "heavy voice" quality of depressors, and that they are no more structurally relevant as allotones of the high toneme than low tones are structurally relevant as allotones of the low toneme. The influence of depressors in giving rise to nonsignificant variants of the two structurally significant tonological units, the high and the low tonemes, is a fact noted by all investigators of Nguni tonal systems. To upset this obvious fact for the sake of rising tones not patently conditioned by depressors is not justified from the practical point of view. Furthermore, even these rising tones are seen to be patently conditioned by depressors in dialects and even in idiolects of standard speech where depressor sonorants and nasals occur. Rather than interpret all rising tones according to the minority that do not appear to be conditioned by depressors, I would interpret all rising tones according to the majority that undoubtedly do appear to be so conditioned.

There are five criticisms of Lanham's interpretation at the tonological level:

1. The overlooking of the fact that the great majority of rising tones are overtly conditioned by depressors.
2. The attribution of an inherent low toneme to consonants. Vowels bear tonemes in Zulu, but not consonants.
3. The low toneme constituent of the \(HL\) toneme cluster does not constitute a downstep as the low toneme constituent of the \(HH\) toneme cluster and as all other low tonemes.
4. The LH toneme cluster does not have the essential concomitant of vowel length that characterizes the HL toneme cluster.

5. A lack of economy in the marking of both the "heavy voice" quality and the inherent low toneme of depressors.

There are also two criticisms at the tonomorphological levels:

1. This interpretation necessitates the marking of rising tones that are not structurally significant, for it is only the rising tones occurring without depressors in nominal extra prefixes that are sometimes structurally significant, e.g. /Indoda (a man) > /yIndoda/ (by a man). This causes great complexity at the tonomorphological level, for tonal morphemes incorporating high tones now have additional allomorphs in which H is represented by LH wherever a high tone coincides with a depressor syllable. This complexity is at its greatest with the {HL} tonal morpheme, where the allomorphs (HH ~ LH) ~ HH are now represented as ((HH ~ LH ~ HH ~ LH ~ LH) ~ (HL ~ LH)). Although this complexity could be reduced in description by a general statement on the influence of depressors, it could not be avoided in transcription, e.g. /xIndoda/ (headmen) and /xInsizwa/ (young men) belong to the same tone class characterized by the same tonal morpheme {HL}; /xIndoda/ (walls) and /xakkhalala/ (old men) belong to the same tone class characterized by the same tonal morpheme {HL}.

2. This interpretation does not account for the low tones that are sometimes structurally significant in nominal extra prefixes, e.g. /lumntj/ (a person) > /ngumndth ~ whumnt ~ humnt/ (by a person), i.e. ( ) > ( ). Here I would interpret in terms of depressor influence on the low toneme (mid allotone > low allotone), e.g. /ngumnt ~ whumnt ~ hhmumnt/, in the same way as I would interpret in terms of depressor influence on the high toneme (high allotone > rising allotone), e.g. /yIndoda ~ hhIndoda/.

Lanham's interpretation accounts for the influence of depressors on the high toneme but not on the low toneme; or for the effect of extra prefix inflection on the high toneme (L + H > LH) but not on the low toneme (L + L > L). This weakness is serious in cases of latent influence: /umntj > umnt/, which I would show as /humnt > hhmmnt\[4.\]

\[4.\] Lanham shows /humnt > umnt/, but /humnt/ can only be realized as */d'mnt/ ( ), and */d'mnt/ ( ) can only be marked as /humnt/ (see 3.2.2.1. Tonal Steps).
(ii) Rycroft's interpretation is based on the existence of depressor sonorants and nasals as well as depressor stops (occlusives and clicks) and spirants (fricatives). I have corroborated Rycroft's observations by specific enquiry, and I therefore interpret all rising tones as allotones of the high toneme conditioned by depressors. In nominal extra prefixes with depressor sonorants and nasals, the rising tones are conditioned by depressors whose "heavy voice" quality is often latent. I would indicate the noun allomorphs of the agentive extra prefix as /ng/ ~ hh ~ yh ~ wh ~ lh/ instead of as /ng~g~y~w~l/, which are realized as /(ng~
yh~η)~(hh~δ)~(yh~y)~(wh~w)~(lh~l)/, the nondepressor variants being the commonest. Whatever the phonetic variant, however, the effect is always the same: the conditioning of the rising allotone of the high toneme and the low allotone of the low toneme.

This interpretation is not subject to the five tonological criticisms of Lanham's interpretation, but it could be criticized on the grounds that it marks features which occur only rarely in the standard dialect. This sort of situation is inevitable, however, owing to the factor of linguistic drift (see 1.1.2.). We have to describe the Zulu language as if it were static, but it is not; furthermore, it shows signs of having evolved rapidly in recent times.

The grammatical criticisms of Lanham's interpretation also do not apply to this interpretation. It has a weakness however: how do we treat the rising tones that arise as a result of contraction in the noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11, 8 and 10, and 2a? There is no depressor influence here, either covert or overt. The only solution is to indicate the noun prefixes of classes 5 and 11 as /111/ ~ /11/ and /11d/ ~ /1dh/ when necessary, for the normal allomorphs /11/ and /11/ become /X: ~ i:/ and /N: ~ å:/ only in slow speech. This is the convention with the noun prefixes of classes 8 and 10, /izi/ and /iziN/, which are commonly realized as /X: ~ i:/ but not normally as /11/. Here the full forms are still in use, whereas the full forms /ili/ and /ulu/ are no longer so. The noun prefix of class 2a is a more real problem because there is no full form; the existence of /awo/ (Doke's Grammar) is so doubtful that most speakers do not recognize it.

This interpretation has a more serious weakness however: how do we treat the rising tones of the agentive prefixes /6i/, /x/, /x/, /x/ occurring commonly in the Natal dialect? Only the consonant 1 The alternative consonant pattern (see 2.2.3.) includes such sounds).
of the last two forms is a depressor. We cannot postulate latent influence here, for the depressor counterpart of /s/ is /z/ and the distinction between /s\i:/ (class 7) and /z\i:/ (class 8) depends upon this contrast, and there is no depressor counterpart of /\ as the lenis consonants do not reflect this contrast. There is no alternative but to treat these rising tones as structurally significant in themselves, and to set up a "leftover" toneme cluster in accordance with Lanham's concept of "peripheral contrasts".

The recognition of this toneme cluster in the case of /6\i:/ and /s\i:/ leads to its recognition in the case of /z\i:/ and /z\i:/, for these forms are all morphologically as well as tonologically identical. Does its recognition in these cases lead to its recognition in the case of /bu:/ and /s\i:/? These prefixes are tonologically identical with the agentive prefixes in question, but not morphologically identical. The latter have arisen probably on analogy with the former, but whereas vowel length is inherent in the noun prefix with the former, it is inherent in the agentive prefix itself with the latter. This is no real reason, but we cannot admit the toneme cluster here. If we were to do so, we would have to admit it in more and more cases and finally arrive at Lanham's conclusion which I reject for the seven reasons set out above. Somewhat arbitrarily I admit this toneme cluster only in the case of the agentive prefixes /bu:, si:, z\i:, zi:/; and also in the case of the noun prefixes /y:, i:, y:, y:, \ as a better solution to the problem posed in the previous paragraph. It also occurs in negative infix allomorphs of the present future tense: /z\i:/ ~ /z\i:/ ~ /z\i:/ (definite) and /y\i:/ ~ /y\i:/ ~ /y\i:/ (indefinite). The fact that vowel length is a necessary concomitant of rising tones representing toneme clusters but not of rising tones representing allotones of the high toneme, corroborates this decision.

(iii) In my master's thesis, I adopted an interpretation of rising tones that differentiates between rising tones as allotones phonologically conditioned by depressors and rising tones as toneme clusters morphologically conditioned by nominal extra prefix inflection. This interpretation reflects a mixing of structural levels that I cannot justify here. Lanham suggests this possibility for practical purposes: like Lanham, I could adopt it for practical purposes only.
With regard to inherent vowel length, Lanham recognises it as phonemic everywhere but does not mark it when it coincides with the Hb toneme cluster. Similarly we could accept Lanham's interpretation of rising tones as toneme clusters but mark them only in the nominal extra prefixes where they are structurally significant. This is tantamount to an admission of phonemic overlapping, and it is in fact the interpretation I adopted in my master's thesis. Apart from the theoretical objections, the criticisms against Lanham's interpretation apply partly to it, namely the third and fourth tonological criticisms and the second tonomorphological criticism. And yet native speaker reaction accepts it as the truest reflection of the facts, despite its fundamental illogicality.

3.2.3.3. There is a third type of tonal glide which is simply a combination of the other two tonal glides. It is interpreted accordingly as the Hb toneme cluster with depressor influence, e.g. /nja + ˌɪnjáː mhɛnjáː +/ (with a dog) (/>.), /ˈjhi + ˌɪnjáː yhɪnjáːː/ (by a dog) (/>.), /ˈimˈvdláːːː/ (rain) (/>.).

3.2.4. Tonemes

Taking the intonational segment as the unit within which tonemes contrast significantly with one another (see 3.2.1.), and bearing in mind the three factors of phonetic environment (see 3.2.2.) and the fact that tonal glides are not to be interpreted as phonemes (see 3.2.3.), I set up two differentiating tonemes, the high or H or /˘/ and the low or L or /\/, and two demarcating or junctural tonemes, the upstep or /\"/ and the downstep or /\/. All Zulu tones, high, mid, low, extra-high and extra-low, rising and falling, may be described in terms of these tonemes.

3.2.4.1. Differentiating tonemes

The high toneme has four allotones:

1. The high level tone which is the norm.
2. The rising high tone conditioned by depressors.
3. The high-to-mid falling tone on penultimate non-depressor syllables or the rising high-to-mid-falling tone on penultimate depressor syllables in final cadence.
4. The lowered high level tone on ultimate non-depressor syllables or the lowered rising high tone on ultimate depressor syllables in final cadence.

The low toneme has four allotones:

1. The mid level tone which is the norm.
2. The low level tone conditioned by depressors.
3. The mid-to-low falling tone or the high-to-low rapidly falling tone on penultimate nondepressor syllables or the low-to-low (extra low) falling tone on penultimate depressor syllables.
4. The extra low level tone on all ultimate syllables in final cadence.

3.2.4.2. Demarcating tonemes

The downstep toneme occurs between high tonemes in sequence, so that the high toneme in the succeeding intonational segment is mid high in relation to the high toneme in the preceding segment.

The upstep toneme occurs between high tonemes in sequence, so that the high toneme in the succeeding intonational segment is extra high in relation to the high toneme in the preceding segment.

Note:

(i) The question of tonemic overlapping is irrelevant outside the intonational segment because it is only within this unit that tonemic contrasts operate significantly. Here there is no overlapping between the two differentiating tonemes. Tonal steps also do not overlap: either the downstep or the upstep occurs to mark the boundaries between tonal morphemes.

(ii) Identification: The fact that suprasegmental phonemes do not have absolute phonetic qualities gives rise to difficulties of identification not encountered with segmental phonemes. The identification of tonemes in terms of significant contrasts is possible only if the intonational segment within which these contrasts operate contains both high and low tonemes. If it contains only high tonemes or only low tonemes, there is indeed a difficulty of identification, for there is normally no difference between low tonemes after an overt tonal downstep marked by the sequence HL and high tonemes.
after a covert tonal downstep marked by the sequence H'H. With
depressor syllables the difficulty is reduced by the character-
stic allotones brought about by depressor influence, and there
is no problem with such nouns as /fm\'vila/ (rain) (\_'_) and
/\nd\db\a/ (man) (\_'_). The problem is most acute with such nouns
as /\nk\db\i/ (chief), /\nk\db\i/ (ox), /fm\'\n\n/ (baboon), /Imp\h\h/ (goods), /\n\m/ (field), with tonal pattern (\_'_). Do these
mid tones belong to the high toneme or to the low toneme? The
problem is solved by reference to tonal morphology: the identifi-
cation of tonemes is clarified when they are seen as constituents
of tonal morphemes whose morphophonemic alternations are established.
The context of imposed penultimate length provides a solution, for
the tonal morpheme \{HH\} has a special penultimate length allomorph
whereas the tonal morpheme \{LL\} has not, so that /\nk\db\i/ is seen
to be /\nk\db\i~n\nk\db\i/ and /fm\'\n\n/ to be /fm\'\n\n/. In final
cadence, however, where intonational length occurs concurrently
with syntactical length and all penultimate tones fall, it is often
difficult to distinguish between /\nk\db\i~/ (\_'_') and /fm\'\n\n/ (\_'_'). The locative inflection provides the best solution, for
HH > LHL and LL > HLL, and the identification of the mid tones of
these nouns is thus as follows: /\nk\db\i\n\n/ ~ /\nk\db\i\n\n/, /\nk\db\i\n\n/ ~ /\nk\db\i\n\n/, /fm\'\n\n/ ~ /fm\'\n\n/, /Imp\h\h/ ~ /Imp\h\h/, /\n\m/ ~ /\n\m/.

Westphal commences his tonal study of Xhosa nominals by saying that
"a tonemic analysis of Xhosa must follow and cannot precede a grammatical
analysis", and Lanham concludes his study of Xhosa tonemes with an
appendix in which he writes "(although) tonemic analysis does not
necessarily presuppose a complete analysis of tonal grammar, the inter-
pretation of doubtful tones according to tone patterns (tonal morphemes)
--- becomes a normal procedure as the analysis of tonal grammar is
advanced". Although both these scholars somewhat overstate the case,
it is certainly often necessary to resort to tonal grammar to clarify
the identification of tonemes. In defence of this procedure, the use
of grammatical data to determine units at the phonological level, I
quote Welmers who writes that "(although) a phonological analysis
must be justifiable on phonological grounds, --- the fact that an ana-
lysis may have been suggested by morphological data does not invali-
date it".

3.2.5. An alternative interpretation

Seeing that the significant contrasts between tonemes depend upon
the distinctive feature of pitch alone, as opposed to the significant
contrasts between segmental phonemes which depend upon a maximum of four distinctive features as to place of articulation and a maximum of six distinctive features as to manner of articulation, it is possible to set up the contrasts as phonemic in themselves. In this analysis the contrasts are regarded as phonemic only when they are covert between high tonemes in sequence, but it is possible to treat the overt contrasts as phonemic too. There are then two tonemes, that represented by the HL contrast and that represented by the LH contrast. The toneme /1/, the tonal downstep, occurs between the sequence HL as well as between high tonemes in sequence, and the toneme /"/, the tonal upstep, occurs between the sequence LH as well as between high tonemes in sequence, and there is then no need to set up the two "segmental" tonemes, H and L, in addition. Toneme patterns are described in terms of differentiating "suprasegmental" tonemes instead of demarcating "segmental" tonemes, as follows:

HL: "a'a'fa'na (boys), "in'ai'zwa (young man),
LH: a"ma'doda (men), "in'doda (man), "im'fene (baboon),
IH: a"ma'khina (old men), "in'to'mbi (girl), "in'ko'mo (beast),
EH: "ama'khosi (chiefs), "in'kosi "in'kosi+ (chief), with the

toneme cluster HL as a tonal downstep within the syllable.

An advantage of this interpretation is that it does not reflect structurally irrelevant tonal changes. The use of the upstep mark initially shows that the following syllable is on an upstep regardless of the tonal level of the final syllable of the foregoing word, e.g. /si'60'na a'a'fa'na+ (we see the boys - indicative mood),

/"si'60'na a'a'fa'na+/ (we see the boys - subjunctive mood),
cf. /si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/ and /"si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/. and the non-use of the downstep mark initially shows that the following syllable is on the same tonal level as the final syllable of the foregoing word, e.g. /si'60'na a"ma'doda+ (we see the men - indicative mood),

/"si'60'na a"ma'doda+ (we see the men - subjunctive mood),
cf. /si'60'na "ma'doda+ and /"si'60'na "ma'doda++/1, where the tonal change on the initial syllable of the noun is structurally irrelevant. This system of tone-marking clearly shows the significant contrasts because it shows only the significant contrasts,

1 Normally realized as /si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/ or /si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/ and as /si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/ or /"si'60'na "a'a'fa'na+/.

ii Normally realized as /si'60'na "ma'doda+ or /si'60'na "ma'doda+/ and as /si'60'na "ma'doda+ or /si'60'na "ma'doda+./
the upsteps and the downsteps. It also clearly shows the effects of tonal assimilation, e.g. /ˈɛməsiˈmiːni > ˈeməsiˈmiːni/, cf. /ˈɛməsəmɪnɪ > ˈɛməsəmɪnɪ/ (in the fields),
of tonal dissimilation, e.g. /ˈɪnˈsɪtʃwa > ˈɪzioneˈʃwa/, cf. /ˈɪnˈsɪtʃwa > ˈɪzioneˈʃwa/ (young men),
of tonal displacement, e.g. /ˈɪnˈkoˈmə > ˈɪzɪnˈkoˈmə > ˈɪzɪnˈkəmə/ cf. /ˈɪnˈkəmə > ˈɪzɪnˈkəmə > ˈɪzɪnˈkəmə/ (cattle).

I do not adopt this interpretation here, however, because it does not describe tonal morphology satisfactorily. Although it avoids the problem of the identification of mid tones in cases such as /ˈɪnˈkəsi/ (chief) and /ˈɪmˈfəne/ (baboon), it neglects the difference between /ˈɪnˈkəsi > ˈɪnˈkəʃənɪ/ and /ˈɪmˈfəne > ˈɪmˈfənənɪ/. Tonal morphology is best described in terms of "segmental" tonemes constituting tonal morphemes or rather their realizations.

3.3. Toneme Clusters

There are two types of toneme cluster, the HHi toneme cluster and the LH toneme cluster. Lanham attributes inherent low tonemes to depressors to account for the fact that the rising tones they condition are identical to the rising tones conditioned by nominal extra prefixes with inherent low tonemes, thus regarding the LH toneme cluster as "central", while I, after Rycroft, attribute depressors to nominal extra prefixes to account for the fact that the rising tones they condition are identical to the rising tones conditioned by depressors, thus regarding the HHi toneme cluster as "peripheral" on account of its low functional load. Both toneme clusters occur with the concomitant of vowel length.

3.3.1. The HHi toneme cluster

This cluster occurs with inherent morphological length /i/ in the following instances:

1. In the noun prefixes of classes 2a, 5 and 11, 8 and 10. In normal speech these prefixes occur as /əiː/, /ɪiː/ and /ʌiː/, /iː/ and /ˈɪiː/ respectively. There is thus a tendency for the toneme cluster to be replaced by a high tone, when it occurs with inherent length but not when it occurs with imposed length.

2. In the indicative past tense infix /əiː/, e.g. /ˈʌiːdəkə kəhlɜː (they saw well).
3. In the subjunctive past tense negative infix /ngā/, e.g. /dāngā'66ən kahlə+/ (and they did not see well), and in the alternative infix /āi/, e.g. /dāi'66ən kahlə+/ (and they did not see well).

4. In the potential present tense negative infix /ngāi/, e.g. /angē'hālə/ (he cannot write).

5. In the contracted third person prefixes of the indefinite indicative present future tense, e.g. /sāybhənə > sāhənə+/ (they will go), cf. /sāybhənə > sāhənə+/ (we will go).

6. In the present perfect tense suffix /əi/, possibly a contraction of /həi/.

7. In the third position demonstrative suffix /yəi/, probably a contraction of /yānə/.

8. In the adverbs /nəi/ (interrogative) and /məi/ (conjunctive).

9. In the verb prefix in dependent positive copulative constructions, e.g. /məi sīkhōnə+ (if/when we are there), and in the progressive implication prefix, e.g. /səsōkathə+/ (we are still present).

10. In certain ideophones and interjections, e.g. /zWi:/ (of flinging through the air), /mə/ (hey! alas! take care!). Also /d'məi/ (my mother).

The /H/ toneme cluster occurs with imposed syntactical length /+/ in the following instances:

1. As a constituent of certain tonal allomorphs:
   (a) Allomorph of tonal morpheme /HH/,
   e.g. noun: /sāməkhōnə+ (chiefs)
   adjective: /sāməkhūlə+ (big ones)
   adverb: /tāphālə+ (only)
   verb: /thēngə+yithənə+/ (not to buy it)
   /yithənə+ (buy it!)

   (b) Allomorph of tonal morpheme /H+i after tonal displacement:
   e.g. noun: /inkōnə (beast) > /1əinkōnə+ (cattle)
   adverb: /sīkhōnə+; cf. /sākhōnə+ (they are present)
   verb: /thōngəsikhēnthə+/ (not to choose them)
   /sikhēnthə+ (choose them!)
(c) Allomorph of tonal morpheme $[LL]$ after tonal displacement:

- **noun:** /inyb$n$/ (bird) > /izinyb$n$/ (birds)
- **verb:** /chvn$h$/ (they have agreed)

2. As a result of tonal allomorph contraction:

   (a) Monosyllabic stem nominals with high tone final syllables:

   - **nouns of class 9:** /inja+/ (dog), /1nto+/ (thing)
   - **adjectives of class 9:** /$\delta$h$/ (good), /$\delta$m$/ (bad)
   - **adverbs:** /m$\delta$n$/ (now)
   - **nouns of class 1a:** /$\delta$/ (no example)

   Note that nouns of classes 2a, 5 and 11, show an overlap of the two length phonemes, e.g. /$\delta$:zwi+/ (word), /$\delta$:f$/ (crack).

   Note that nouns of classes 8 and 10 have no contraction here, e.g. /izinja+/ (dogs).

   (b) Monosyllabic stem verbs with high tone final syllables,

   - **pres. neg. indicative:** /k$d$/ (we are not eating)
   - **pres. pos. potential:** /$\lambda$ng$d$/ (we can eat).

3.3.2. The $[LL]$ toneme cluster

This cluster occurs with inherent morphological length $/\delta/$ in the following instances:

1. In the noun prefixes of classes 2a, 5 and 11, 8 and 10. In normal speech these prefixes occur as $/\delta:/, /\delta$/ and $/\delta:/, /\delta:/, /\delta:/, /\delta:/$ respectively. Also note the numeral pronoun /z$\delta$$/ (both), cf. /z$\delta$nh$/ (both).

2. In the agentive prefixes of classes 7 and 8, 10 and 11: /$\delta$:y, $\delta$:y, $\delta$:n, $\delta$/.

3. In negative infix allomorphs of the present future tense: /$\delta$/ (definite) and /$\delta$/ (indefinite).

The $[LL]$ toneme cluster does not occur with imposed syntactical length $/\delta/$.
Morphotonology accounts for the tonemic representation of tonal morphemes, that is for their realizations as allomorphs. Morphotonemic changes may be described either in terms of "arrangement" (the IA method) or in terms of "process" (the IP method). They can always be described as arrangements, but they cannot always be described as processes. Thus /tsihlali/ (chairs) cf. /tsihlali/ (chair) may be described as an arrangement:

LL prefix + HL stem with /i/ prefix,
LN prefix + LL stem with /i/ prefix,

and as a process: LL stem > HL stem due to the displacement of the prefix high toneme by the depressor; whereas /lalim/ (they plow) cf. /lalim/ (we plow) may be described as an arrangement but not as a process, because it is not certain that the high toneme of the stem is the displaced high toneme of the prefix.

Where the cause of a morphotonemic change is certain, I describe the change as a phonologically conditioned process; where it is not certain, I describe the change as a morphologically conditioned arrangement. I would do the same with regard to morphophonemic change: I would describe palatalization in the formation of locative nouns as phonologically conditioned because the cause is obvious, e.g. /ingub > *ingudweni > ehgutsheni/ (on the blanket), but in the formation of diminutive nouns as morphologically conditioned because the cause is obscure, e.g. /inta > intatshana/ (a small hill). I believe that the linguist should describe obvious causes: it is not sufficient to describe a change as an arrangement when the cause is obvious.

Phonologically conditioned morphotonemic variation is relevant to tonology, but not morphologically conditioned variation. Only the former type of alternation is therefore described in this section, the description of the latter type being deferred to the section on tonal morphology (see 5.4.).
3.4.1. Tonal Assimilation

This process causes a low toneme following a high toneme to become a high toneme, if the low toneme occurs in a nondepressor syllable, e.g. /6666'fana/ (they have seen), but not if it occurs in a depressor syllable, e.g. /6666'fani/ (they have written), or often even in a syllable adjacent to a depressor syllable, e.g. /6666'mfani/ (they have gone).

Tonal assimilation takes place in many instances:
Within words it takes place with the noun prefix tonal morphemes /si/, e.g. /6666'fana/ (boys), cf. /si'fina/ (young men),
with the object concord of verbs in certain tenses, e.g. /h6666'a66ma/ (they do not see it), cf. /h6666'fina/,
/6666'fina/ (we seeing it), cf. /si'fina/;
and elsewhere, e.g. /6666'fina/ (they see), cf. /si'fina/ (we see),
/6666'mfani/ (they have seen), cf. /si'mfani/ (we have seen),
/6666'fani/ (people of long ago), cf. /ki'dali/ (long ago).

Between words it takes place with the noun prefix tonal morpheme /k/, e.g. /6666'mfani/ (we like corn - subjunctive),
cf. /6666'mfani/ (we like corn - indicative),
with the subject concord of verbs in certain tenses, e.g. /6666'fani/ (they plow),
/6666'mfani/ (they have plowed);
and elsewhere, e.g. /6666'sfina/ (that we should bring it soon).

Assimilation is virtually compulsory with a single low toneme, but optional with subsequent low tonemes, depending upon the speed of speech, e.g. /6666'mfani/ > /6666'mfani/ (in the fields),
/6666'mfani/ (they see it), cf. /si'mfani/ (we see it).

There are certain contexts in which tonal assimilation does not take place. It does not take place on penultimate syllables (the syllables bearing primary word stress), where its operation would destroy the distinctiveness of the final tonal morpheme, both within words, e.g. /6666'mfani/ (friends), not */6666'mfani/ as /6666'fani/ (boys),
/6666'mfani/ (elders), not */6666'mfani/ as /6666'fani/ (warriors),
and between words, e.g. /thin'6an/ (we people), cf. /thin'6an/ (we, the people),
/6666'mfani/ (they not playing nicely).
It does not take place on initial (between words) antepenultimate syllables, where its operation would bring about either a covert tonal downstep instead of an overt tonal upstep,
e.g. /thiná 6afáñá/ (we boys), cf. /thin+ 6á6'fáná/ (we, the boys),
/6ángákhulúmí kkhùllù+/ (they not talking very much),
/6álñá/ (they plow) does not > */6á'fmá/,
or an overt tonal downstep instead of no tonal step,
e.g. /thiná mādòdà/ (we men), cf. /thin+ 6ámádòdà/ (we, the men),
/6ángàgwàzi 6ándòmov+/(they not stabbing at close quarters),
/6ílima/ (we plow) does not > */sílima/,
at the boundary of the final tonal morpheme. Here the effect is to preserve the significant low tone of the prefix,
e.g. /6áfáná, mādòdà/ (short form nouns),
cf. /6á'fáná, mādòdà/ (full form nouns with initial elision).
Note that tonal assimilation takes place regularly on noninitial (within words) antepenultimate syllables,
e.g. /6á6'fáná 6á6'y166n/ (the boys do not see it),
cf. /6ílzí66nà 6í6í66n/ (the young men do not see them).

As to final syllables, tonal assimilation takes place only in the absence of penultimate length. Here it operates not only from low to high,
e.g. /6á6'fáná 6á6"fikíllè+/ (the boys have arrived),
cf. /6á6'fánà+ 6ásikíllè+/ (the boys, they have arrived),
but also from high to low,
e.g. /6ámákhélá 6áfsikíllè+/ (the elders have arrived),
cf. /6ámákhélá+ 6ásikíllè+/ (the elders, they have arrived).

Whereas the assimilation of a single tone is virtually compulsory elsewhere, even in careful speech, here it is either optional or not with a final low tone and either compulsory or not with a final high tone, according to the context of tonal steps. With optional assimilation the determining factor is simply the speed of speech. Assimilation is optional with a final low tone before a tonal upstep, but not (it cannot occur) before a tonal downstep.

e.g. /6á6ántà 6ádè/ (the people are tall),
cf. /6á6ántà 6á6dè ~ 6á6ántà "á6ádè ~ á6ánt" "á6ádè/ (tall people);
e.g. /6ámá'qhàwè máddè/ (the warriors are tall),
cf. /6ámá'qhàwè 6á6ádè ~ 6á6á'qhàwè "má6ádè/ (the warriors are tall);
e.g. /6ámákhélá "6áñjàmí/+ (how do they live?),
cf. /6ámákhélá 6àn6imá/+ (they live with difficulty).
Assimilation is compulsory with a final high tone before a tonal downstep, but not (it can occur) before a tonal upstep, e.g. /izibh/ "izindh izindh/ (long limbs), cf. /izibh/ (the limbs are long), cf. /izibh/ "izindh/ (the limbs, they are long); e.g. /intbhi/ "en'k'k'k'khkhul/ (a very big girl), cf. /intbhi/ "khkhul/ (a very pretty girl), cf. /intbhi+ 'enhle khkhul/ (a girl, a very pretty one); e.g. /mâsîyîlêthbhi/ "khâhul/ (let us bring him food), cf. /mâsîyîlêthbhi kohn/ (let us bring him it); e.g. /sâbhâ/ "incwêhdi/ (we wrote a letter), cf. /sâbhâ yomâ/ (we wrote the very one); e.g. /sâbhâ sôbô khâhul/ (if we see well, with H>L), cf. /sôbô khâhul/ (we see well, without L>H), cf. /sôbôkhâ k'â'njâh/ (we see thus, with (or without) L>H), cf. /sâbhâ sôbôkhâ/ "k'â'njâh/ (if we see thus, without (or with) H>L).

The rules controlling the assimilation of final tonemes are thus similar in principle to the rule that prohibits the assimilation of low tonemes on initial antepenultimate syllables: the avoidance of a covert tonal downstep instead of an overt tonal upstep and of an overt tonal downstep instead of no tonal step, at the boundary of the final tonal morpheme.

With inflected monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs and with words terminating in the perfect suffix /â:/ or the demonstrative suffix /yâ:/, the final syllables (the syllables bearing primary word stress) are equivalent to penultimate syllables elsewhere in that they are not subject to tonal assimilation, e.g. /sôbôkhâ:khâhul/ (they have seen well), and the penultimate syllables are equivalent to antepenultimate syllables elsewhere in that they are subject to tonal assimilation within words (noninitially), e.g. /sôbôkhâ:nâ:khâhul/ (they have plowed well), cf. /sôbôkhâ:khâhul/ (they have dressed well), but not between words (initially), e.g. /thinâ: sîlâ:/ (as for us, we are here), cf. /bônâ: "sîlâ:/ (as for them, they are here) ii.

---

i.e. where such a step would arise if it did not occur.

ii cf. /thinâ sîlâ:/ (we ourselves are here - compulsory final assimilation), /bônâ "sîlâ:/ (they themselves are here - optional final assimilation).
There are certain instances where the rules of tonal assimilation on final syllables are reversed. Whereas the assimilation of a final high toneme before a tonal downstep is compulsory elsewhere, here it does not occur,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{thln}a\ \text{6ant}u/ (\text{we people, we Africans}), \]
\[ \text{cf.} /\tilde{\text{6}}\text{nt}u/ \text{6ant}u/ (\text{the people themselves}); \]

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{yh}i\text{z}\text{on}a\ \text{zind}u\text{n}a/ (\text{it is the very indunas}), \]
\[ \text{cf.} /\text{yh}i\text{z}\text{on}n(\tilde{a})\ \text{zind}u\text{n}a/ (\text{it is the indunas themselves}); \]

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{s}i\text{ng}\text{h}\text{6}o\text{n}\text{f}\ \text{m}u\text{n}\text{t}u/ (\text{we not seeing anyone}); \]
\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{y}i\text{16}o\text{-y}h\text{h}k\text{ absor}+/ \text{} (\text{be a chief}), \]
\[ /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{ung}\text{6}o\text{-kh}\text{on}a/ \text{} (\text{not to be present}), \]
\[ /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{ung}\text{6}o\text{-}6\text{kh}\text{hal}, \text{6}\text{th}\text{un}t\text{u}/ \text{} (\text{not to be sharp, blunt}). \]

Whereas the assimilation of a final low toneme before a tonal downstep does not occur elsewhere, here it is optional before a covert tonal downstep,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{uk}\text{uk}h\text{6o ns}i\text{w}a\text{a} \sim /\text{uk}\text{uk}h\text{6o}'nsi\text{w}a/ (\text{there is no young man}), \]
\[ /6\text{y}d\text{-ns}i\text{w}a\text{a} \sim /6\text{y}d\text{-}'nsi\text{w}a/ (\text{that young man}), \]
\[ /\text{si}\text{l}o\text{ni ns}i\text{w}a\text{a} \sim /\text{si}\text{l}o\text{n}i'nsi\text{w}a/ (\text{we see no young man}), \]
\[ /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{uk}d\text{a-l}6\text{ph}\text{a} \sim /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{uk}d\text{a-l}6\text{pp}\text{a}/ \text{} (\text{to be here}), \]

where the downstep is covert and there is optional assimilation,

\[ \text{cf.} /\text{akukh}6o\ \text{6}\text{ant}u/ (\text{there are no people}), \]
\[ /\text{l}6\text{d}6o-\text{6}\text{ant}u/ (\text{those people}), \]
\[ /\text{si}\text{l}o\text{ni \text{m}u\text{n}t}u/ \text{} (\text{we do not see anyone}), \]
\[ /\text{uk}d\text{a}-\text{kh}\text{on}a/ \text{} (\text{to be present}), \]

where the downstep is overt and there is no assimilation.

These instances represent short form noun and copula verb constructions, a type of syntactical relationship so close that it is often written with hyphenated word division, e.g. /thln\text{-6ant}u/, /\text{akukh}6o\text{-6ant}u/, or even with no word division, e.g. /6d6o\text{6ant}u/. Thus there is grammatical significance in the reversal of rules in these instances.

There are instances other than these constructions where this reversal applies,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{sing}h6o\text{n}f \text{kh}l\text{h}e/ (\text{we not seeing well}), \]
\[ /\text{si}n\text{g}h6o\text{n}f \text{nh}k\text{a}nc\text{an}e/ (\text{we not seeing at all}), \]

and where this reversal optionally applies,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{s}6\text{f}\text{h}u\text{m}u\text{m}u\text{k}\text{d}e \sim /\text{s}6\text{f}\text{h}u\text{m}u\text{m}u\text{k}\text{d}e/ (\text{they came from far away}), \]
\[ /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{uk}1\text{l}e\text{ 'kw}\text{eth}\text{n}u \sim /\tilde{\text{k}}\text{uk}1\text{l}e\text{k}w\text{eth}\text{n}u/ (\text{our food}), \]
\[ /\text{izith}6\text{ 'z}a\text{m}l/ (\text{my limbs}), \text{cf.} /\text{izith}6\text{ z}i\text{n}e/ (\text{the limbs are long}). \]

\[ \text{It is significant that possessives take precedence in word order over all qualificatives.} \]
To sum up: tonal assimilation on final syllables does not operate with penultimate length, and without penultimate length it operates according to the context of tonal steps, except in constructions of the closest syntactical relationship.

Tonal assimilation sometimes operates retrospectively to a single initial syllable, so that noun prefixes such as /hêa, âmá, isi/ occur as /hêa, âmá, isi/ in quick speech, e.g. /hêântwâna/ (children), cf. /izibâdâ/ (affairs); whereas noun prefixes such as /hêa, âmá, isi/ occur as /hêa, âmá, isi/ even in careful speech, e.g. /hêâfâna/ (boys), cf. /izinsîzwâ/ (young men).

Similarly /hêyâvûmâ+ > hêyâvûmâ+ (they agree) and /hêâ'vûmâ+ > hêâ'vûmâ+ (they do not agree) in quick speech only, which I have excluded from this study.

Nevertheless it is important at least to illustrate the tonal levelling brought about by tonal assimilation in quick speech in the absence of penultimate length. With nouns and nominals without depressors, tonal levelling obliterates the tonal distinctions completely, for there is tonologically no difference between high tonemes after a covert downstep and low tonemes after an overt downstep, e.g. /hêâ'fânâ ∼ hêâ'fânâ/, i.e. /hêâ'fânâ/ (boys), /âmá'khósâ ∼ âmá'khósâ/, i.e. /âmá'khósâ/ (chiefs), /âmákhâhâl ∼ âmákhâhâl/, i.e. /âmákhâhâl/ (elders), /hêâhîlôbô ∼ hêâhîlôbô/, i.e. /hêâhîlôbô/ (friends).

With nouns and nominals with depressors, the effect of tonal levelling is considerably reduced, e.g. /izinsîzwâ ∼ izinsîzwâ/, i.e. /izinsîzwâ/ (young men), /izimvûl ∼ isimvûl/, i.e. /izimvûl/ (rains), /izintâmbi ∼ izintâmbi/, i.e. /izintâmbi/ (girls), /izîndle6â ∼ izîndle6â/, i.e. /izîndle6â/ (ears), /izintâmbô ∼ izintâmbô/, i.e. /izintâmbô/ (strings), /izîngûâ ∼ izîngûâ/, i.e. /izîngûâ/ (blankets).

With verbs without depressors the tonal distinctions are apparent if not in the stems then in the prefixes, which are independent tonomorphologically here,
e.g. /aj:/n̩'a - aj:/n̩'/, i.e. /aj:/n̩'/h (we see - indep.pos.pres.indic.),
    cf. /ah/lim'/, i.e. /ah/lim'/h (we plow);

e.g. /aj:/n̩'a - aj:/n̩'/, i.e. /aj:/n̩'/h (we see - dep.pos.pres.indic.),
    cf. /ah/lim'/, i.e. /ah/lim'/h (we plow);

e.g. /as16n', i.e. /as16n'/ (we do not see - neg.pres.indic.),
    cf. /asl1lim'/, i.e. /asl1lim'/h (we do not plow);

e.g. /as16n', i.e. /as16n'/ (let us see - pos.pres.subject.),
    cf. /asl1lim'/, i.e. /asl1lim'/ (let us plow).

Nevertheless there are instances to tonal levelling,

e.g. /l17h' 'íng̪àb ~ l17h' 'íng̪àb < l17h' 'íng̪àb/ (bring the blanket),
     /k17h' 'íng̪àb ~ k17h' 'íng̪àb/ (choose the blanket),

for there is tonologically no difference between high tonemes before
a covert tonal upstep (or after a covert tonal downstep) and low
tonemes before an overt tonal upstep (or after an overt tonal downstep).

3.4.2. Tonal Dissimilation

This process causes high tonemes to condition low tonemes and low
tonemes to condition high tonemes, in certain instances. The main
instance is the determination of the noun prefix tonal morpheme.

If this toneme is low the prefix morpheme is /h/lim'/, e.g. /hamàbh'/
(men), /hamàkh/ (old men), and if it is high the prefix morpheme
is /h/lim', e.g. /izins/ (young men). Where the low toneme occurs
in a nondepressor syllable it becomes a high toneme by tonal assimi­
lation, e.g. /6åh'/ (boys), /hamàk/ (chiefs). Another
instance of tonal dissimilation results from the effects of tonal
displacement, e.g. /inkm'/ (beast) > / inhocom/ (conjunctive),
/inkom/ (agentive), /zinkom/ (plural), where the final high
toneme becomes a low toneme when the penultimate low toneme becomes
a high toneme. Thus a final high toneme requires a penultimate
low toneme for its realization,

e.g. /inkm'/ > /zinkom/ (cattle),
    /inkh/ - /fr'/ (dog), cf. /izinj/ (dogs);

e.g. /6nxnh/ (he being not with it),
    cf. /6nxn̩nh/ (he being not with a blanket);

e.g. /saphum/ (where did they come from?),
    cf. /saphum/ (they come from far away).  

1 cf. /saphum/ (where do they come from?),
    /saphum (they come from far away).
Verbal examples such as /šāhūmbil+/ (they have gone) and /šāfikil+/ (they have come) seem to reflect tonal dissimilation, but a consideration of the forms /šāhambil+, šāhambil+/ (they/we have gone) and /šāfikil+, šāfikil+/ (they/we have come) shows that these examples reflect morphotonemic variation that cannot be attributed to tonal dissimilation. These are morphologically conditioned changes as opposed to phonologically conditioned changes.

3.4.3. Tonal Displacement

This process causes a high toneme on a depressor syllable to be displaced onto the following syllable, but it cannot operate if the following syllable is also a depressor syllable,

e.g. /lāshūmb/ > láshūmb+ ~ láshūmb/ (chairs),

/ešākhumē > lāšinkūmē ~ lāšinkūmē/ (clay pots),

e.g. /lāšiphē > lāšimpē ~ lāšimpē/ (feathers),

cf. /lāshūmb > lāshūmb+ (choppers), /lūshīngā > lūshīngā/ (walls).

Tonal displacement is not prevented by a high toneme in the following syllable,

e.g. /lāshūmb > nhūmsizwə/ (with a young man),

cf. /lāšūmb > nhūmsizwə/ (with a child);

e.g. /lāšinkūmē > ngēnkūmē+ (by means of an ox),

cf. /lāshūmb > ngēnkūmē+ (on account of rain);

e.g. /lāshīngā > nghēsā'fānē+ (by boys),

cf. /lāshūmb > nhūmsizwə (by young men);

e.g. /lāshīngā > nghēsā'fānē+ (by means of a position),

cf. /lāshūmb+ (by positions).

Tonal displacement does not take place onto final syllables,

e.g. /lāshūmb/ (headman), cf. /lāshūmb+/ (to the headman).

Final syllables characterized by length and/or stress are exceptions,

e.g. /yhlə:/ (by this one - class 1 reference),

/nhhlē:/ (with this one - class 9 reference),

/nghlə: ~ nhhlēpha/ (hereabouts).

In the Natal Coast dialect tonal displacement does not take place here, not because of final syllables but because demonstratives and demonstrative adverbs do not permit it,

e.g. /ngēlār ~ ngēlēpha/ (hereabouts),

/njēngēlār ~ njēngēlēfē/ (just like these ones),

cf. /njēngēlār ~ njēngēlēfē/ in the standard dialect.
Tonal displacement does not take place from long vowel syllables, e.g. /yhi'qhawa/ (by a warrior), /nhe:kheh18,j/ (with an old man), /zlm.t.sizwa/ (by young men), /zImtombJ:/ (by girls).

Tonal displacement occurs with nominals other than nouns. It takes place onto nondepressor syllables but not onto depressor syllables, e.g. /e"si6bl1lV'11 /ez16onrVU+"/ (red), cf. /ez166mvh/ (heavY); e.g. /e"zi6na> yh166na+ (they, class 2), cf. /ez166n/ (they, class 10); e.g. /zh16na> yhlkh6na/ (there - adverb), cf. /iz9blb> yhlslblb/ (yesterday - adverb).

It does not take place onto final syllables, e.g. /z6nke/ (all), cf. /zonkana/ (absolutely all).

The exceptions to this rule, stressed final syllables, are seen in the monosyllabic demonstratives and demonstrative adverbs. e.g. /nghla: ~ nghalaphh/ (hereabouts).

It does not take place from long vowel syllables, e.g. /m4: zihkh6n4+ (if they are present), cf. /zihkh6n4+ (they are present).

Tonal displacement occurs with verbs also. It takes place onto nondepressor syllables but not onto depressor syllables, e.g. /a6ayi"6nl, azlyi 66nl, aziz166nl/ (indep.neg.present tense), e.g. /6ayiv8.lil&+/ (they have shut it), cf. /6ayi"gezl1&+/ (they have washed it).

It does not take place onto final syllables, e.g. /ukuyi1vala/ (to shut it), cf. /jukUzlvhlela ybnfi/ (to shut it for them).

It does not take place from long vowel syllables, e.g. /zih:h6m6+ (they went).

The depressor sonorants and nasals of the nominal extra prefixes, although the "heavy voice" quality is usually latent, not only bring about tonal displacement but also act as a bar to tonal displacement in the same way as all depressors, e.g. /kh"ng'!'iyhlmfen&+/ (it may be a baboon). Rising tones block tonal displacement because of the depressors that condition them, and the rising tone of the LH toneme cluster blocks tonal displacement on analogy with these rising tones, e.g. /kh"ngasI: 'khUndla "es'ihl&+/ (it may be a good position).
3.5. Suprasegmental Phonemes

Here are considered the relationships between tone and the suprasegmental features of length, stress, and intonation; and also the tonal effects of juncture and transition.

3.5.1. Tone and Length. (see 2.5.1. Length)

The relationship between tone and length is that the toneme clusters have vowel length as a necessary concomitant. Inherent length occurs with both the toneme clusters and imposed length with the HL toneme cluster only. When imposed length is removed, the HL toneme cluster is replaced either by a high toneme,

e.g. /isi'khwáno+ > isi'khwaná/ (bag),
    /isílkóöô > isiíkóomá/ (cattle), /injá+ > injá/ (dog),

or by a low toneme,

e.g. /isílkwaná+ > isiíkwená/ (bago),
    /í:ihamba> ó:i:hamba/ (they went),

according to the rules of morphotonemic alternation. Inherent length is never removed in this way, but the toneme cluster is sometimes replaced by a high toneme,

e.g. /á:nome: háná > áló:nome: háñá/ (we have seen the people),
    /í:qá:we > í:iqá:we/ (warrior), /í:khõ:lhá > í:khõ:llá/ (elder),

This replacement is correlated with the speed of speech. Vowel length occurs with high and low tones as well as with toneme clusters. It is an independent feature, but there is undoubtedly a relationship between it and the toneme clusters. The relationship between tone and length is also apparent in final cadence, where intonational length and allotonic variation by way of falling tones occur concurrently in penultimate syllables.

3.5.2. Tone and Stress (see 2.5.2. Stress)

Stress seems to occur both as a marker of words and as a marker of roots, but, apart from the tendency of initial stress in polysyllabic ideophones to condition high tones, e.g. /gumbhquí / ~ /gumbhquí/ (head-over-heels), there seems to be no significant relationship between stress and tone. It is true that penultimate syllables (the syllables bearing primary stress) are not subject to tonal assimilation, but so are antepenultimate and postpenultimate syllables in certain circumstances.
3.5.3. Tone and Intonation. (See 2.5.3. Intonation).

In general the effect of intonation on tone is to upset the significant contrast between the two tonemes, so that it is only within the unit of the intonational segment where intonation has no effect, that this significant contrast operates. In particular the effect of intonation on tone is to give rise to several allotones of the two tonemes in final cadence. It is only in hesitation intonation that there is a change in tone, where the speaker lengthens the final vowel and raises the final toneme to indicate that he is still speaking.

3.5.4. Tone and Juncture. (See 2.5.4. Juncture)

Tone plays a part in indicating grammatical juncture, both with and without vowel length. Tone and length operate together in final cadence to indicate statements, and, in the case of the \( \text{HH} \) tonal morpheme, to indicate the syntactical unit of the phrase, for \( \text{HH} \sim \text{ LH} \) \( \rightarrow \text{ HLL} \). The force of penultimate length in indicating the phrase is strengthened by the nonoccurrence of final tonal assimilation with it. The possibility of the occurrence of final tonal assimilation without it indicates different types of syntactical relationship within the phrase. In tonal grammar the covert tonal steps play an important part in indicating the junctures between tonal morphemes.

3.5.5. Tone and Transition. (See 2.5.5. Transition).

The normal close transition between words is reflected in tone in that an initial low toneme remains low after a low toneme but becomes high after a high toneme, except for initial penultimate and antepenultimate tonemes which are not subject to tonal assimilation.
REFERENCES

3. Doke The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. 1926. Ch. XVII.
8. Lanham Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.).
11. Rycroft Tone in Zulu Nouns, p.46.
12. Doke op.cit. Ch. XVIII.
13. Doke op.cit. Ch. XIX.
14. Cope The Tonal System of Zulu. (op.cit.). Doke as examiner wrote that "These rules constitute the key which has hitherto been unrecognized in the language".
16. Rycroft Melodic features in Zulu eulogistic recitation. (op.cit.).
17. Lanham Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.). Chapters 6 and 7.
22. Lanham Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.). Chapters 6 and 7.
23. Tucker Sotho-Nguni Orthography and Tone-marking. (op.cit.)
24. Letele The Role of Tone in the Southern Sotho Language. 1955.
25. Rycroft  
   Tone in Zulu nouns. (op.cit.), p.44, footnote.

26. Doke  
   The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. (op.cit.), p.179.

27. Westphal  
   Venda Tonal Structure and Intonation.  

28. Beuchat  
   The Tonomorphology of the Tsonga Noun.  

29. Carter  
   Notes on Plateau Tonga. (op.cit.).

30. Welmers  
   The Phonology of Kpelle.  

31. Beach  
   The Science of Tonetics. (op.cit.).

32. Tucker  
   Sotho-Nguni Orthography. (op.cit.).

33. Lanham  
   Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.), p.111-114.

34. Rycroft  
   Melodic features in Zulu eulogistic recitation.  
   (op.cit.).

35. Lanham  
   Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.), p.106-111.

36. Beach  
   The Science of Tonetics. (op.cit.).

37. Lanham  
   The Tonemes of Xhosa. (op.cit.).

38. Tucker  
   Sotho-Nguni Orthography. (op.cit.).

39. Cope  
   The Tonal System of Zulu. (op.cit.).

40. Doke  
   The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. (op.cit.), p.199.

41. Pike  
   Tone Languages. (op.cit.).

42. Lanham  
   Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.), p.106-114.

43. Rycroft  
   Tone in Zulu Nouns. (op.cit.), p.45.

44. Lanham  
   Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.), p.13-16.

45. Cope  
   The Tonal System of Zulu. (op.cit.).

46. Lanham  
   op.cit. p.113-114.

47. Lanham  

48. Westphal  
   1964.

49. Lanham  
   The Tonemes of Xhosa. (op.cit.).

50. Welmers  
   The Phonology of Kpelle. (op.cit.).
CHAPTER 4

Outline of Zulu Grammatical Structure

4.1. Introduction

This view of Zulu grammatical structure is based on Guthrie's strictly formal approach and differs from the traditional "form and function" model established by Doke. I have described the structural categories, their formal features and their functional interrelationships, in two articles: The Grammatical Structure of Zulu (African Studies) and Nominal-Verbal Constructions in Zulu (African Language Studies), particularly the first section, Outline of Zulu Grammatical Structure.

4.2. The tripartite basis

Zulu words are divisible phonologically into those with basic root structure C or CV or CVVC, e.g. /f/ (die), /6on/ (see), /gijim/ (run), and those with basic root structure CV or CVV or CVVCV, e.g. /th!/ (tree), /nkê/ (all), /chá/ (no), /fulâ/ (river), /khûlâ/ (big), /fûthlâ/ (again), /bgxb/ (squelch), /hàllà/ (hurrah). Morphologically they are divisible into words that are inflectionable, e.g. /ûkûfa/ (class 15), /ûkû '66na/ (class 15), /ûkhûgûma/ (class 15), /ûmûthû/ (class 3), /û6onnû/ (class 2), /ûfûlû/ (class 2), and /fûthû/, and words that are uninflectionable, e.g. /chá/, /bgxb/, /hàllà/. These divisions intersect to show three basic categories: verbals (inflectionable words with C/CVC/CVVCV roots), nominals (inflectionable words with CV/CVCV/CVCVCV roots), particles (uninflectionable words with nominal-type roots). The tripartite basis of Zulu grammatical structure is apparent at all levels.

At the morphological level particles are distinct in that they are uninflectionable, whereas nominals and verbals are inflectionable.

---

i As presented in lectures on Bantu Grammar at the London School of Oriental and African Studies.

ii By "roots" I mean the cores to which inflections are affixed. These cores may or may not be fundamental roots diachronically or even synchronically, and I prefer in future to use the term stem.

but differently so. With nominals there are two layers of inflection: the gender-number-person prefixes are affixed to the stem, e.g. /thi > ðmðthi/, and the case prefixes to the word, e.g. /ðmðthi > nhðmðthi, ngðmðthi, njngðmðthi/. I regard the former as simple forms and the latter as inflected forms, and the prefixes as prefixes and extra prefixes respectively. With verbals there is only a single layer of inflection in which the gender-number-person prefixes occur together with the affixes of mood, tense, aspect, &c. All verbals are therefore inflected forms, even the nonfinite forms. These nonfinite forms show that the gender-number-person prefixes are not essential with verbals, whereas with nominals they are so, and the case prefixes are "extra" not only morphologically but also in that they are outside the gender system and in that they are not essential. Thus nominals have stems, simple forms and inflected forms, verbals have stems and inflected forms only, and particles have stems only.

The tripartite basis is apparent syntactically as well as morphologically. Nominals function in several nominal syntax slots but not verbally (except that agentive nominals may function predicatively) or as particles (except that vocative nouns may function interjectively). Verbals function in the verbal syntax slot but not nominally (except the infinitive form) or as particles (except the imperative form). Particles function only as particles. In nomino-verbal construction, however, nominals function freely as verbals (in copulative constructions) and verbals function freely as nominals (in relative constructions).

1 These layers are essentially an inner derivational layer and an outer inflectional layer; hence "simple forms" and "inflected forms".

ii The infinitive form is both a verbal inflected form and a nominal simple form inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes.

iii Possessive prefixes are extra prefixes with gender reference, but they are nevertheless not essential.

iv Adverbs are exceptional as nominals in that they have only a single layer of inflection, so that the extra prefixes are not "extra" morphotactically; they are nevertheless "extra" to the gender system and in that they are not essential.
4.3. Morphology

4.3.0. Morphemes

Morphemes are the building-blocks of morphology; they comprise stems, prefixes and suffixes. Nominal and verbal stems have distinct sets of affixes which combine according to morphotactical rules. The term infix may be used for prefixes which occur only after other prefixes and the term pre-prefix for prefixes which occur only before other prefixes. I distinguish between derivational affixes bringing about either internal (/thenga thengise/(buy < sell)) or external (/thenga umthengi/(buy > buyer)) derivation, and affixes which are inflectional in effect; in this usage the term inflection does not indicate linguistic type or technique. The Bantu technique of word-building is agglutination, e.g. /a-ka-sa-ndi-bal-el-i/ (not-he-still-me-write-to-not-now, i.e. he does not still write to me), but there are instances of fusion, e.g. /bon-wile/ (see + passive derivational suffix + perfect inflectional suffix) > /bonwo/ (to have been seen), and the special perfect stems of stative verbs, such as /gwele/ (to be full) < /gwalile/ (to have become full). Variation in stems also results from the morphophonemic effects of palatalization, e.g. /6opha > 6oshwa/ (to be tied), /6ophela > 6oshelwa/ (to be tied to/for), and nasalization, e.g. /samakhosi/ (chiefs) > /innkosf/ (chief). Here the fusion at the morpheme boundary is relevant to tone-marking: /in'kosa/ or /innkosf/? The nasal belongs to the prefix and the nasal compound belongs to the stem, but /innkosf/ suggests a double nasal. I adopt /innkosf/ in this study, but I do not state that the boundary between prefix and stem lies within the nasal compound. The identification of morphemes and the determination of the boundaries between them do not directly concern this study.

4.3.1. Morphological classes

The three basic categories of Zulu grammar determine the three major morphological classes. Nominals and verbals have distinct sets of inflectional and derivational affixes, and particles are uninflectionable. The subdivision of particles into ideophones and interjections is doubtful morphologically, but ideophones are phonologically set apart by the absence of penultimate stress and close transition and by the presence of initial stress and open transition. There is no subdivision of verbals; hence the single morphological
class of verbs. Nominals are subdivided morphologically into independent nominals belonging to short series, e.g. /əməθi/, fəθi, ədəθi/ and dependent nominals belonging to long or full series, e.g. adjectives: /ədə'khələ, ədə'khələ, ədə'khələ/ &c., pronouns: /ədənə, ədənə, ədənə/ &c., and demonstratives or selectors: /ədəhə, ədətə, ədətə/ &c.1 There is also the subdivision of genderless nominals or adverbs. The fact that they do not belong to genders renders them exceptional as nominals: they have only the extra prefix layer of inflection, so that the simple form is not prefix + stem but stem only, and they cannot support dependent words by the operation of grammatical agreement. Adverbs appear to have emerged fairly recently from the body of gender nominals, for the majority retain initial elements of gender prefix origin, e.g. /kw/ (class 6) in /mənə/ (now), /mənənə/ (soon), &c., /pəhə/ (old class 16) in /phəndə/ (outside), /phəkəθə/ (inside), &c., /kə/ (old class 17) in /khət/ (far), /kəfənə/ (near), &c., /kə/ (old class 12?) in /kənə/ (well), /kəkənə/ (very much), &c. The latter is now a derivational prefix forming adverbs from adjective stems, but the rest are difficult to isolate. Likewise such words as /vənə/ (dawn), /fənə/ (yesterday), /fənəmənə/ (today), /fənəmənəf/ (tomorrow), /nəfənəmənə/ (afternoon), are now not nouns but genderless nominals, and /ləfə/ (here - old class 16 selector), /ləkənə/ (always, since - old class 17 selector), and /kənə/ (there, then, when - old class 17 pronoun).

The morphological classes are the categories I set up as the Zulu parts of speech:

nominals: gender nominals: independent: nouns
dependent: pronouns
selectors
adjectives
adverbs
genderless nominals:
verbs
particles:

4.3.2. Grammatical agreement

The system of grammatical agreement operates by means of gender-number-person prefixes relating to the basic classification of nouns into genders. This system is irrelevant with particles because they are uninflectionable. With verbs it is relevant but not fundamental; 1Selectors are words without stems, but they are otherwise regular nominals.
but with nominals it is fundamental, for all nominals (except adverbs) by definition belong to genders.

There are thirteen noun classes arranged into eight genders. There is also an attenuated ninth gender; its remnants function mostly as adverbs, but the indefinite verbal prefix /ku/ which relates to it is in common use. The first five genders consist of pairs of classes, one to signify the singular and one the plural. Class 11 shares plural class 10 with class 9, thus constituting the sixth gender, and the remaining two classes (Meinhof’s classes 14 and 15) comprise the seventh and eighth genders which are neutral as to number. It is only the prefixes of the personal gender that signify person as well as gender and number, so that the set of concords relating to this gender is far more complex than that relating to any other gender.

The following tables set out:
A. the gender system as illustrated by the noun prefixes,
B. the gender and grammatical agreement systems as illustrated by the prefixes of the first gender (nominal classes 1 and 2), and
C. as illustrated by the prefixes of the sixth gender (nominal classes 11 and 10).

A. Noun Prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genders</th>
<th>Classes</th>
<th>&quot;Full Form&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;Short Form&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 sg</td>
<td>umi₁ ~ um (~um)</td>
<td>mi₁ ~ m (~m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 pl</td>
<td>a6a (~a6)</td>
<td>6a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1a</td>
<td>2a pl</td>
<td>o: (~o)</td>
<td>6o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>3 sg</td>
<td>umi₁ ~ um (~um)</td>
<td>mi₁ ~ m (~m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>4 pl</td>
<td>isi ~ im (~im)</td>
<td>mi ~ m (~m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>5 sg</td>
<td>(ili~) i; (~i)</td>
<td>g ~ li₁</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>6 pl</td>
<td>ama (~um)</td>
<td>ma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>7 sg</td>
<td>isi ~ i₈ (~i₈)</td>
<td>si ~ s (~s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>8 pl</td>
<td>izi ~ i₂ ~ i;</td>
<td>zi ~ z (~z)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>9 sg</td>
<td>iN</td>
<td>N ~ NN¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>10 pl</td>
<td>izIN ~ i:N</td>
<td>ziN ~ NN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ These forms are used only with monosyllabic stem nouns.
A. Noun Prefixes (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Genders</th>
<th>Classes</th>
<th>&quot;Full Form&quot;</th>
<th>&quot;Short Form&quot;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>11</td>
<td>(ulu~) u: (~u)</td>
<td>φ ~lu¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>pl</td>
<td>iziN ~ iN</td>
<td>ziN ~ NN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>u6u (~u6)</td>
<td>6u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>uku ~ uk</td>
<td>ku (~k)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(9)</td>
<td>(17)</td>
<td>(uku)</td>
<td>(ku)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

(a) "Full Form". The drift towards monosyllabic noun prefixes is apparent. The monosyllabic forms (except 1a and 9), the syllabic consonant forms (u, i, iz), and the long vowel forms (except 2a, 5 and 11), are not used with monosyllabic stem nouns. The monosyllabic forms in brackets are rarer than the unbracketed alternatives, and I would exclude them as careless speech. They give rise to new consonant clusters and render the stems subject to tonal change, e.g. /nha + 1stobi > nhsotobi > nhsotobi (> nhsotobi)/ (with a headring). Such tonal change is normally the case only in singular classes 1a and 9, e.g. /nha + inkbo > nhnknbo/, and in plural classes 8 and 10, e.g. /inkbo > lznkbo~/ lznkbo+/ (cattle). The disyllabic forms in brackets are virtually extinct. The forms used with initial vowel stems are always monosyllabic: /um, a6, am, is, iz/, e.g. /'amanzi/ (water), /tandla, izandla/ (hands, hands), etc.

(b) "Short Form". The vowelless forms (except 1a and 9, 5 and 11) are not used with monosyllabic stem nouns. The vowelless forms in brackets I would exclude as careless speech, e.g. /'akhotshih, shihl, ~shih, shihl (~shih, shihl)/ (no chair, no chairs). The allomorph NN gives rise to a variety of syllabic nasals, e.g. /'akhotshinhmb'/ (there are no girls), /'akhotshinhmb'/ (there are no cattle). Difficulties as to the placement of penultimate length arise with monosyllabic stem nouns in classes 1a and 9, 5 and 11, e.g. /'akhotshinj³'/ (there is no dog), cf. /'akhotshinj³'/ (there are no dogs); e.g. /'angifamb-mar'/ (I hear no word), cf. /'angifamb-maz/ (I hear no words).

¹ These forms are used only with monosyllabic stem nouns.
These difficulties do not arise in the Natal dialect: /<akukh> hnjó/ and /<angwá liizwi>/.

The forms used with initial vowel stems are always vowelless: /6, s, z, 60, e.g. /<akukh> ándh, ándh/ (there is no hammer/hammers), /<alóni> ándh+/ (we see no water).

(c) Noun prefixes are mutually exclusive: they cannot combine as in some other Bantu languages. Gender 1 is personal, gender 7 abstract and gender 8 verbal in meaning, but not much more may be said concerning the meanings of Zulu genders.

B. Gender 1 Prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indep. prefixes</th>
<th>dependent prefixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>indep. nominals</td>
<td>dependent nominals</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Nouns</th>
<th>Pronouns</th>
<th>Selectors</th>
<th>Adjectives</th>
<th>Verbs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st. p. sg.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>mi</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>nge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1st. p. pl.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>thi</td>
<td>so</td>
<td>so</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd. p. sg.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>we</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>we</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd. p. pl.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>ni</td>
<td>no</td>
<td>no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd. p. sg.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>wámu</td>
<td>ye</td>
<td>wó</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd. p. pl.</td>
<td>a6a</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

(a) Pronouns (a) (b) (c) are the absolute with root /<n̩/,
the inclusive with root /<n̩k̩/ and the exclus-
ive with root /<n̩w̩/. Selectors (a) and (b) are the 1st and 2nd
position forms. Adjectives (a) and (b) are the true adjectives
with dependent stems which use the long forms, e.g. /<es̩e̩kháll>/
(we who are old), and the noun adjectives with independent stems
which use the short forms, e.g. /<es̩e̩kháll>/ (we who are sharp,
bright). In the third person plural both types use the prefix
/a6a/, but the element /6a/ is a verbal concord with (b) and a
nominal concord with (a).1

(b) Where 1st and 2nd person forms are wanting, it is the rule to use
3rd person forms; hence the adjective /<es̩e̩kháll>/ (we who are old),
where the third person concord /6a/ refers to the first person,
and the expression /<m̩n̩k̩ 16>/ (my very self), where the 3rd person
selector has to agree with the 1st person pronoun.

---

1 The forms described here as "adjectives" are in fact adjectives in
nomino-verbal construction.
C. Gender 6 Prefixes

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>indep. prefixes</th>
<th>dependent prefixes</th>
<th>indep. nominals</th>
<th>dependent nominals</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Nouns (a) (b) (c)</td>
<td>Selectors (a) (b)</td>
<td>Verbs (a) &amp; (b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Pronouns lu lu lu | Adjectives ezi(N) | Plural zi |}

4.3.3. Inflection

4.3.3.1. Nominal inflection

All nominals decline in the same way, although there are four tonal declensions. The case extra prefixes are as follows:

i) /yihi/ (agentive case) with allomorphs /hh~ (yh~ wh~ ng)/, /hh~ yh~ lh/ (class 5) and /hh~ wh~ lh/ (class 11) with nouns; /yhi~ nga/ with pronouns; /yhi/ with selectors; /ng/ with adjectives; /yhi/ with adverbs. This form functions adverbially after a passive verb to indicate the agent of the action. It also functions predicatively, e.g. /yhiMin4+/ (it's me).

ii) /nha/ (conjunctive case) with allomorphs /nha~ nhe~ nho~ nh/. This form functions adverbially in the sense of "with". It also functions as its head word in the sense of "and, also, even", e.g. /anda'kati nhezlnja+/ (cats and dogs), /izlnja nha4+ (even dogs).

iii) /nga/ (instrumentive case) with allomorphs /nga~ nge~ ngo~ ng/. This form functions adverbially in the sense of "by, with, by means of", and in combination with adverbs and the locative inflection in the sense of "towards, in the direction of, in the vicinity of".

iv) /kunka/, /njenga/, /nganga/ (comparative cases) with the same allomorphs as /nha/ and /nga/ above. These forms function adverbially to express "rather than", "just as, like", "as large/small as", respectively.

(v) /ku/ (locative case) with allomorphs /ku/ with nouns of the first gender and /e~ eini~ / with nouns of all other

---

There are also the agentive prefixes /yi/ (cl.7), /x/ (cl.9), /xi/ (cl.10), and (less commonly) /xi/ (cl.14), which are used instead of (not extra to) the noun prefixes.
genders, with initial vowel elision of the noun; /ku~ki/
with pronouns; /ku/ with selectors; /ku~k/ with adjectives;
with adverbs it is wanting. This form functions adverbially
to express "in, at, to, from, among".

(vi) /kwa~/ (locative possessive case) with the same allomorphs as
[nga] and [nha] above. It is controlled by adverbs of place,
of which a few control the conjunctive prefix alternatively,
e.g. /d'da~ kwam~ ~mum~ nham~/ (near me). It is also
prefixed to nouns (with initial vowel elision) and pronouns
of the personal gender only, to express "at, to, from the
home of", e.g. /kwa~/ (at my home).

vii) Possessive case. This prefix is an extra dependent prefix: it
expresses gender-number-person as well as case. As to person,
it has forms for the 3rd person only, which results in such
expressions as /thim~b~w~6a~mam~+/ (we of our mothers). It
has the same morphophonemic variations as [nga] and [nha]
above, e.g. /6a~ 6a~ 6a~ 6a/ (class 2). Class 1a nouns
use instead the independent prefix /ka/ with initial elision,
preceded by a dependent prefix except for noun classes 1,3,4,6,
9, e.g. /inj~nd~kak~6a~/ (father's dog), /iz~nja zik~6a~/
(father's dogs), cf. /iz~nja zik~6a~/ (fathers' dogs,
Class 2a noun). The possessive form functions qualificatively
after nominals.

viii) "Vocative Case". I once described this form as an inflection
of the noun, not by affixation of extra prefix but by elision
of initial vowel together with tonal change\(^4\), but I now treat
it as a different form of the noun altogether, the short form
(with "short form" prefix) as distinct from the full form
(with "full form" prefix), both of which are inflectionable by
the nominal extra prefixes. The main instances of its use are
as a vocative, e.g. /zin~tmbi+/, cf. /zi~ntmbi+/ (girls), after
/ndk~k~/, e.g. /nd~k~k~ h~n~t~h~/ (there is no-one), after a nega-
tive verb without object concord, e.g. /b~h~h~h~ h~n~t~h~/ (they
see no-one), in negative copulative constructions, e.g.
/nd~n~t~f~n~/ (we are not boys), and in positive copulative
constructions of a particular type, e.g. /thim~th~ h~n~d~h~/ (he
is long-limbed); after 1st and 2nd person absolute pronouns,
e.g. /thim~h~n~t~h~/ (we people), and after all agentive abso-
lute pronouns, e.g. /y~h~n~a~ h~n~t~h~/ (it is the very people);
after 2nd position demonstratives, e.g. /i~b~b~ h~n~t~h~/ (those
people), and sometimes after 1st position demonstratives as
a variant to the full form with initial elision, e.g. /l66a-gant/-l66a-gant/ (these people); when qualified by the irregular adjectives, e.g. /gandwa munti maphle/ (which person do they want?), cf. /gandwa maphle u-muntu/ (same meaning, with the noun in apposition to the adjective). The short form is tonally distinct from the full form with initial elision, e.g. /hifil kumint+/ (we are not going to the person), cf. /hifil kumint+/ (we are not going to anyone).

These extra prefixes combine according to the following morphotactical rule: nha ± yhi (kuna ~ njenga ~ nganga) ± nga ± (ku ~ kwa), e.g. /nha"yhi'n'd6.na/ (and by an induna), /nha"yhi'nje'n'duna/ (also like an induna), /nha"yhi'gang'send'mu"n/ (even as at the induna's), /nha"yhi'gang'send'mu"n/ (and as at the induna's), /yhi"nje'gang'send'mu"n/ (it is as at my home).

The possessive prefixes are mutually exclusive with all other prefixes except /nga/ and /ku/, with which they combine as follows: possessive prefixes ± (nga + genderless nominals) ~ (ku ~ (nga + ku) + gender nominals), e.g. /in'dawo ynge'se'dawo/ (a nearby place), /umintu wa"ku'leyondawo/ (a person of at that place), /umintu wane'ku'leyondawo/ (a person of round-about that place).

There are certain limitations in nominal extra prefix inflection. Nouns and demonstratives are fully inflectionable and also absolute pronouns, but inclusive and exclusive pronouns are uninflectionable and also simple form adjectives. Adverbs are inflectionable except locatively, and adverbs of manner have no locative, instrumentive or possessive inflections. The short form noun is fully inflectionable, but the agentive inflection occurs very rarely for the noun is able to function agentively without inflection, e.g. /as66ona munt+/ (we are not seen by anyone), /munt maphle"fun'hyo+/ (it is what sort of person that they want?).

1 with roots /phi/ (which?), /nf/ (what sort?), and /nyh/ (only one), which are exceptional in various ways.
ii Locative nouns preplace "s" on inflection.
iii Adverbs with initial vowel /e/ preplace "s" on inflection.
iv Except the irregular adjectives, e.g. /ngamnye/ (one by one), /ngaphiphie/ (by which one?).
4.3.3.2. Verbal inflection

All verbs conjugate in the same way, although there are two tonal conjugations. The affixes of mood, tense, aspect, pend, tive, and implication, occur together with the gender-number-person prefixes and do not constitute an extra layer of inflection. The conjugation of the verb has five moods, two nonfinite (infinite and imperative) and three finite (indicative, subjunctive, potential). The finite moods are subdivided according to tense and aspect and according to pend and tive in such a way that each form is doubly described as indep. pos., indep. neg., dep. pos., dep. neg. There are final and nonfinal forms in all moods, conditioned by the presence or absence of penultimate length. These distinctions, like the distinctions of tense and aspect, pend and tive, are sometimes indicated by tonal morphemes only. Subject concords occur only in the finite moods, and object concords optionally in all moods. The finite moods can incorporate prefixes of implication. The indicative mood has /se/ (exclusive) used with positive tenses, /sa/ (progressive) used with the present tense, positive and negative, and in compound tenses, /ka/ (inceptive) used with the present tense (except perfect aspect), negative only, and in compound tenses. The subjunctive mood has /wa/ (politeness) and /66/ (obligation) used with the present tense, positive and negative, and the potential mood has /se/ (exclusive) used with positive tenses. All tenses of the finite moods and even the infinitive mood can incorporate the implication prefixes /ya/ and /ze/ (future intention), which reduce subsequent morphemes to the positive infinitive pattern, both phonally and tonally, as the subjunctive prefix /66/ also does. The exclusive implication prefix /se/ reduces subsequent morphemes to the pattern of dependent tenses with some speakers.

---

1 These terms refer to the distinctions between independent and dependent tenses and positive and negative tenses, for which there are no current grammatical terms.

2 Forms incorporating the prefix /ya/ (present imperfect) and the suffix /ile/ (present perfect) are final forms, but they can occur nonfinally (without penultimate length) with a syntactically "strong" adjunct such as an adverb of manner, for special emphasis.

3 The general rule is to incorporate this prefix into both independent and dependent tenses, as with /sa/ and /ka/, as a fully fledged implication prefix. There are anomalies, however, e.g. /666yəʰəməhə+/ (they are now going), where /66/ and /ya/ are dependent and independent morphemes side by side.
The full morphological complexity (except the tonal aspect) of the conjugation of the Zulu verb is described in three articles by Beuchat\(^5\). Here I simply show the range of affixes by setting out the conjugation of the verb /šša6šna/ (to see), a verb of tone class I. The subject concord is /ša/ (first gender, plural number, third person) throughout, and object concords and implication prefixes are omitted.

I. INFINITIVE MOOD (No tense, aspect, pend, implication; no reference to gender-number-person except by object concord, but infinitive verbs are also nouns of nominal class 15).

pos. ška6šna
neg. škungšönl ~ škungšönl+

II. IMPERATIVE MOOD (No tense, aspect, pend, tive, implication; no reference to gender-number-person except by object concord, but imperative verbs refer to the second person, singular and plural).

sg. š6nš (a)
pl. š6nš

III. INDICATIVE MOOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
<th>Pend and Tive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple:---</td>
<td></td>
<td>Positive /Negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Past</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>independ. šša6šna ~ (šša6šna)(c) šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dep. (šša6šna)(b) (šša6šna)(d) šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Present</td>
<td>(a) Perfect</td>
<td>independ. šša6šna ~ šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dep. šša6šna+ (f) šša6šna+ (g)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Imperfect or Continuous</td>
<td>independ. šša6šna ~ šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dep. šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) Future (h)</td>
<td>independ. šša6šna ~ šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>dep. šša6šna+ šša6šna+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compound:-(i)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3. Recent Past (a) Perfect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Imperfect or Continuous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Future</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
III. INDICATIVE MOOD (continued)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
<th>Past and Tive</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4. Remote</td>
<td>(b) Imperfect</td>
<td>6ā:6a6b6na~ 6ā:6a6b6n'</td>
<td>6ā:6a6b6n+ 6ā:6a6b6n'+</td>
<td>6ā: + forms as above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) and (c)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Future</td>
<td>(a) (b) (c)</td>
<td>6ā:6b6b + forms as above</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

IV. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (No aspect, no pend)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Tive</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Past</td>
<td></td>
<td>6ā:66nā (a) 6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>(c) 6a:66nā (j)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Present</td>
<td></td>
<td>6ā:66nā (a) 6ā:6eng6n'~ 6ā:6eng6n'+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

V. POTENTIAL MOOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Aspect</th>
<th>Past and Tive</th>
<th>Positive</th>
<th>Negative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Simple:</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā (k) (a) 6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6n'~ 6ā:6eng6n'+ (j)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Present</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>dep. 6ā:66nā</td>
<td>6ā:66nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>indep.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Compound:</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Recent</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Remote</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>Present</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td>6ā:6eng6nā</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note:

(a) The incorporation of object concords often brings about changes in tonal allomorphs, but here it brings about a change in tonal morpheme: /66nā > (y166nā ~ y166n'+)/, /66nā > (66y166n'~ 66y166n'+)/.

(b) Now functioning as the subjunctive positive past tense and replaced by the independent positive tense. The past tense is rarely used dependently, however.

(c) Now functioning as the (c) form of the subjunctive negative past tense and replaced by the original independent negative perfect tense, /66b6nāng'/.
(d) Now functioning as the (a) form of the subjunctive negative past tense and replaced by the original dependent negative perfect tense, /66ng66n6n/. 

(e) These forms are past tense in meaning rather than perfect aspect; they refer either to recent past or to remote past according to context. There seems to have been a drift from a remote past/recent past/present distinction to a past/present perfect/present imperfect distinction, but the drift is not yet complete. These forms (and the forms in /8;/) retain past tense meaning, but they occur in compound tenses with perfect aspect meaning.

(f) The positive forms in /ile/ have perfect aspect meaning normally, and recent past tense meaning only in a context of recent past time. These final forms occur nonfinally (without penultimate length) to indicate perfect state, particularly with inchoative verbs, for the nonfinal forms in /8;/ indicate recent past action only.

(g) The negative forms in /ile/ have perfect aspect meaning only, and these final forms occur nonfinally (but still with penultimate length) to indicate perfect state, particularly with inchoative verbs, for there are no nonfinal forms. These forms seem to be a recent creation to complete the present perfect paradigm.

(h) The future aspect signs are /zb ~ zbh/ (definite) and /yh ~ ybk/ (indefinite) in the positive, and /zh ~ zbh ~ zhi/ (definite) and /yh ~ ybk ~ yhi/ (indefinite) in the negative.

(i) Compound tenses are formed by the verbal auxiliary /6h/ followed by dependent present tenses, thus:

Recent past imperfect:

- /66h 66n6n > 6666n6n+ (3rd p. pl.)
- /h66n6n > (6hy6n6n) ~ h6h6n6n+ (3rd p. sg.)
- /66h 66n6n > (6hy6n6n) ~ h6h6n6n+ (2nd p. sg.)

Remote past imperfect:

- /66:6h 66n6n > 6666n6n+ (3rd p. pl.)
- /w6:6h 66n6n > w6y6n6n+ (3rd p. sg.)
- /66:6h 66n6n > w6y6n6n+ (2nd p. sg.)

Future perfect:

- /66:6h 66n6n6n+ (they shall have seen)

The full forms occur very rarely in the compound past tenses, and the bracketted alternatives are less common.
(j) The (c) forms are less common; only polysyllabic stem verbs of tone class II have (b) forms. The commonest subjunctive past tense negative infix is /ngə/, apparently a combination of /ngə/ and /ə/.

(k) Note the tonal displacement in /ghəkəbənə/, which is blocked in /ghəkəbəhi/.

(l) Stative verbs have special perfect stems indicating perfect state exclusively. Examples of such stative stems are /lele < lala/ (lie down), /hlezi ~ hlezi < hala/ (sit down), /phetha < phatha/ (carry), /thwela < thwala/ (carry), /mthi < mtha/ (get pregnant). These verbs are inchoative in meaning, but there are inchoative verbs without special perfect stems, e.g. /lamba/ (get hungry), /oma/ (get thirsty). The verb /ukəla/ (to lie down) has the forms /uhalə: ~ 6uhaləib+/ (recent past), /6uhalə ~ 6uhaləib+/ (they are lying down (state) - present perfect), /uhalə ~ 6uhaləib+/ (they are lying down (action) - present imperfect). Even here, however, the distinction between past action and perfect state is tenuous, for /6uhaləib+/ (recent past) may refer to present perfect state in a context of present time, and there is even the negative counterpart, /uhaləi/. I therefore treat /6uhaləib+/ and /6uhaləib+/ as regular and special forms of the present perfect tense, the former occurring only rarely. With some verbs these forms occur as alternatives with the same meaning, e.g. /mi ~ mile < ma/ (stand up), /uthi ~ uthile < sutha/ (get satiated), /thule ~ thulile < thula/ (become quiet). Polysyllabic stem verbs ending in /ela, ula, ale, ama, ana/ have perfect stems ending in /ela, ula, ale, ama, ana/. Some speakers regard these as special stems for which there are corresponding regular stems of rare occurrence, i.e. as stative verbs, e.g. /phumala/ (be rested - special stem) and /phumalə: ~ phumaləi/ (have rested - regular stem), and some speakers as regular stems for which there are no corresponding special stems, i.e. as nonstative verbs, e.g. /phumala: ~ phumaləi/, where the final form occurs nonfinally (without penultimate length) to indicate perfect state, and finally to indicate either perfect state or past action according to context, and the /ile/ form is nonexistent. This is partly a matter of dialect and partly a matter of idiolect, and it
106

reflects a state of drift\(^1\). My conclusion is to classify
all forms under the heading of the present perfect tense\(^2\).

4.3.4. Derivation

4.3.4.1. Nominal derivation

The nominal derivative suffixes are /\(\text{ana}\)/ (diminutive) and
/\(\text{kazi}\)\(~\text{azi}\)/ (augmentative or feminine), which may combine as
follows: /(\(\text{kazi}\)\(~\text{azi}\) \(\sim\) \(\text{azi}\))/ > /\(\text{kazanA}+\text{azi}\)/ (feminine diminutive). All three are found with nouns, e.g. /\(\text{inkosi}\)/ (chief) >
/\(\text{inkosinazi}\)/ (chief's son), /\(\text{inkosikazi}\)/ (chief's wife), /\(\text{inkosizazi}\)/ (chief's daughter), only the first two with adjectives, only the
first one with pronouns, and none with selectors. On the other hand
the selectors have the suffixes /\(\text{b}\)/ and /\(\text{yA}+\text{yanA}\)/ by which the
2nd and 3rd position forms are derived from the first. The noun
prefixes are essentially derivational, as when /\(\text{tuminta}\)/ (person)>
/\(\text{tumintb}\)/ (plural), /\(\text{tumint}\)/ (type), /\(\text{hoya}\)/ (quality), as when
/\(\text{tumiph}\)/ (gift) > /\(\text{tumipher}\)/ (personal name), and as when adjective
stems become abstract nouns by the addition of the class 14 prefix,
e.g. /\(\text{hle}\) > /\(\text{hleb}\)/ (beauty), /\(\text{hle}\) > /\(\text{hleb}\)/ (height, depth, length),
/\(\text{hnya}\) > /\(\text{hnyab}\)/ (darkness). Nouns are derived from verbs by
the addition of the suffixes /\(\text{b}\)/ (personal nouns) and /\(\text{c}\)/ (impersonal
nouns) and the appropriate prefixes. Compound nouns and reduplicated
nouns are also derivations.

4.3.4.2. Verbal derivation

The verbal derivative suffixes are /\(\text{a}\)/ (passive), /\(\text{ek}\)\(~\text{ak}\)/
(neuter), /\(\text{el}\)/ (applied), /\(\text{is}\)/ (causative), /\(\text{an}\)/ (reciprocal), /\(\text{isis}\)/
(intensive), /\(\text{ele}\)/ (perfective), /\(\text{ezel}\)/ (persistent), /\(\text{ul}+\text{ul}\)/
(reversive), only the first five of which are in common use. These
suffices combine according to the following morphotactical rule:
/\(\text{ek}\) + /\(\text{is}\) + /\(\text{el}\) + /\(\text{an}\) + /\(\text{a}\)/, e.g. /\(\text{bonela}\)/ (see for one another),
/\(\text{boniselana}\)/ (show for one another), /\(\text{bonakaliswa}\)/ (be made visible).
Verbs are derived from ideophones by the addition of the suffixes
/\(\text{b}\)/ (transitive), /\(\text{c}\)/ (intransitive), /\(\text{a}\)/ (causative). Reduplicated
verbs are also derivations.

\(^1\) Since Doke's Grammar (1927) /\(\text{sale}\) < \(\text{sala}\)/ (remain), /\(\text{sele}\) < \(\text{sala}\)/
(give birth), and since Doke's Dictionary (1946) /\(\text{thethe}\) < \(\text{thatha}\)/
(take), /\(\text{vatho}\) < \(\text{vatha}\)/ (get dressed), now accepted as special
stative stems. There are a number of forms such as /\(\text{hambe}\) < \(\text{hamba}\)/,
/\(\text{lambe}\) < \(\text{lamba}\)/, /\(\text{cashe}\) < \(\text{casha}\)/, whose use is at present sub-
standard; they await acceptance.

\(^2\) Beuchat prefers the perfect tense, regarding recent past action
as the main meaning.
4.3.5. Nomino-verbal constructions

I have described these constructions in an article\textsuperscript{7}; here I give a summary. Nomino-verbal constructions are described as such because morphologically they employ verbal prefixes with nominal bases and nominal prefixes with verbal bases, and syntactically they enable nominals to function verbally and verbs to function nominally. The former are copulative constructions and the latter relative constructions. These processes of nominalization and verbalization open the way for layer upon layer of prefixal inflection.

Copulative constructions are based on nominal extra prefix inflected forms (simple forms cannot occur copulatively except with adverbs, adjectives and short form nouns)\textsuperscript{i}, and enable these forms to function predicatively, the function characteristic of verbs. These constructions are conjugated verbally, but the conjugation is limited to the simple present imperfect tense of the indicative mood, and compound tenses of imperfect aspect only.\textsuperscript{ii} Pend and tive are fully represented, but there are limitations as to implication\textsuperscript{iii}.

Relative constructions are based on verbal dependent inflected forms (the nonfinite and subjunctive moods cannot occur relatively as they have no pend), and enable these forms to function substantively or qualitatively, the functions characteristic of independent and dependent nominals respectively. These constructions are declined nominally, and the extra prefix inflected forms then function adverbially, the function characteristic of genderless nominals or adverbs.

Relative constructions are formed from verbs and copulative constructions by the addition of the relative prefix morpheme \textasciitilde{a\textordmasculine}, which has the allomorphs \textasciitilde{a} ~ \textasciitilde{e} ~ \textasciitilde{o} according to the determination of the

\textsuperscript{i} Also inclusive and exclusive pronouns, e.g. \textasciitilde{ING\textasciitilde{a}\textasciitilde{a}} (I am alone). These pronouns and adjectives (except the irregular adjectives) are uninflectionable by nominal extra prefixes.

\textsuperscript{ii} The present tense of the potential mood is also possible, e.g. \textasciitilde{ANG\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}K\textasciitilde{a}} (he may be a chief), but there is no negative counterpart.

\textsuperscript{iii} The copula verb construction (verbal prefixes + copula verb + nominal bases) is fully conjugationable. Here the meaning is of becoming rather than of being, e.g. \textasciitilde{SI\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}G\textasciitilde{a}} (we are becoming men), cf. \textasciitilde{SINH\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}} (we are men); e.g. \textasciitilde{SI\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}KH\textasciitilde{a}} (we will be there - by becoming there), cf. \textasciitilde{SI\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}SIFKH\textasciitilde{a}H\textasciitilde{a}} (we will be there - by being there).
verbal prefix. There is also a relative suffix morpheme /yo/, which is used with the final forms of certain tenses only. Relative constructions are subdivided according to the nature of the relationship:

subjectival, e.g. /ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː ˈəŋɡləʊ̝n̩iɛn̩y̝d́və/ (the boy who sees me),
objectival, e.g. /ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː ˈəŋɡləʊ̝n̩iɛn̩y̝d́və/ (the boy whom I see),
subjectival possessive, e.g. /ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː+ɪŋə yâkə ˈəŋɡləʊ̝n̩iɛn̩y̝d́və/ (the boy whose dog see me),
objectival possessive, e.g. /ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː+ɪŋə yâkə ˈəŋɡləʊ̝n̩iɛn̩y̝d́və/ (the boy whose dog I see),
adverbial, e.g. /ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː ˈəŋɡləʊ̝n̩eŋ́iɛn̩y̝d́və/ (the boy by whom I am seen),
/ˈʰaːtʃaˈuː ˈəŋɡləʊ̝kɪlən̩a n̩y̝d́və/ (the boy with whom I speak),
of which there are several varieties depending upon the inflection of the pronoun: agentive, conjunctive, locative, &c.

4.4. Morphophonology

In section 2.4. (Morphophonology) I briefly described the main phonologically conditioned changes, particularly the changes consequent upon NG compounds (nasalization) and CW compounds (palatalization). Palatalization is sometimes morphologically conditioned in the formation of passive verbs, e.g. /ˈoːpʰələ > ˈoːʃələwə/, /ˈhlaːsələlə > hlaːsələləwə/, where there is no phonotactically necessary for morphophonemic change. The formation of diminutive nouns also demonstrates morphologically conditioned palatalization, e.g. /ˈɪtʰələ > ˈɪtʰələn̩a/ (small hill). Palatalization of alveolar as well as labial consonants takes place here (/ˈtʰəhə,ˈtʰəʃə,ˈn̩əni,/) e.g. /ˈisɪkʰətɪf → ˈisɪkʰətɪfə/ (short time). The morphophonemic change involving the alveolar lateral sonorant is optional, e.g. /ˈiːtʰələ > ˈiːtʰələn̩a > ˈiːtʰələn̩a/ (small calf).

There are other morphologically conditioned changes, as in the formation of the perfect stem where aCa becomes ACa, e.g. /ˈpʰaːθə > pʰetə/, /ˈtʰələ > tʰeːlə/, /ˈbɔːnəkələ > ˈbɔːnəkələ/; /ˈsələ > sələ → sələi/; /ˈzələ > zəle → zələi/; /ˈsələ > sələi/ only; /ˈkʰələ > kʰelə → kʰelələ/; /ˈvələ > vələ/ only; /ˈtʰələ > tʰuːlə → tʰuːlələ/, but /ˈvələ > vələ/ only; but it is not the intention to present a complete statement of all the morphophonemic changes in the language. However, a complete statement of morphophonology is relevant to this study: the tonologically conditioned changes are to be found in section 3.4. (cf. 2.4. under phonology), and the tonomorphologically conditioned changes are to be found in section 5.4. complementing 3.4. (cf. 4.4. complementing 2.4.).
4.5. Syntax

The three basic categories of Zulu grammar determine the three major syntax classes corresponding to the three major morphological classes. The latter are watertight compartments but the former are not so: infinitive verbs may function nominally, agentive nouns may function verbally, imperative verbs and vocative nouns may function as particles; and nomino-verbal constructions bring about wholesale nominalization and verbalization. The nominal syntax class is subdivided into substantive, delimitative, qualificative, and adverbial, corresponding to the morphological subdivision of noun, pronoun, adjective, and adverb. Adverbials are subdivided into conjunctive and nonconjunctive, and conjunctive adverbials into co-ordinating and subordinating. The verbal or predicative syntax class is subdivided into transitive and intransitive. There are no subdivisions of the interjective syntax class, but some cannot control dependent words (reflecting particles), some can only by grammatical agreement (reflecting nominals) and some can with or without agreement (reflecting verbals). The syntax classes are set out hereunder:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Basic Categories</th>
<th>Syntax Classes</th>
<th>Morphological Representatives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>nominal:</td>
<td>substantive:</td>
<td>simple nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>simple self-standing dependent nominals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>simple self-standing relative constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>conjunctive nouns, dependent nominals, relative constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>infinitive verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delimitative:</td>
<td>(a) simple pronouns and demonstratives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qualificative:</td>
<td>(b) simple adjectives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) simple relative constructions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>possessive nominals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>adverbial:</td>
<td>nonconjunctive:</td>
<td>simple adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>case (agentive, conjunctive, instrumentive, comparative, locative) inflected nominals and relative constructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>short form nouns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>conjunctive:</td>
<td>some simple adverbs, e.g. uma, nxu, lapha, loku, ngoba.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>subordinating:</td>
<td>some simple adverbs, e.g. kanti, kodwa, futhi.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>co-ordinating:</td>
<td>some simple adverbs, e.g. uma, nxu, lapha, loku, ngoba.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Basic Categories | Syntax Classes | Morphological Representatives
---|---|---
verbal: | predicative: | verbs
intransitive: | verbs
agentive nominals
copulative constructions
transitive: | verbs
interjective: | interjections
ideophones
vocative nouns
imperative verbs

Note:
(a) The delimitative syntactical slot is before the controlling nominal; after it these words are in apposition.
(b) The qualificative syntactical slot is after the controlling nominal; before it these words are in apposition.
(c) Only irregular adjectives function qualificatively without inflection; otherwise adjectives function qualificatively in relative constructions. The simple form of the adjective occurs only as the base of a copulative construction; it has no independent function.
(d) It is difficult to determine whether a noun after a verb without the possibility of an object concord is functioning adverbially or substantively as object. According to the test of the object concord, it functions adverbially in /ngâ:hlîh khônhâ isîkhåshānhâ/ (I stayed there a short time) and substantively in /isîkhåshânhâ èngâ:slîhîhîh khônhâ/ (the short time that I stayed there).
(e) It is difficult to determine whether an ideophone after a verb functioning adverbially or interjectively: /îndîh yâmâ yâthîl "wôlôkôhîlîh"/ (the building fell down and went crash) and /îndîh yâmâ "wôlôkôhîlîh"/ (the building fell down crash). It certainly functions interjectively as /"wôlôkôhîlîh"/ (crash!).
REFERENCES


2. Cope  The Grammatical Structure of Zulu.  

3. Cope  Nominal-Verbal Constructions in Zulu.  


5. Beuchat  A Restatement of the Zulu Verb Conjugation.  


7. Cope  Nominal-Verbal Constructions in Zulu. (op.cit.).
CHAPTER 5

TONAL GRAMMAR

5.1 Historical Introduction

Several scholars have contributed towards the analysis of Zulu tonal grammar. Beach\(^1\) mentions "the importance of tonetics in the declension of nouns and the conjugation of verbs", but that is all. Doke\(^2\) makes a useful classification of "sequence of tones" into tone patterns which he terms "tonal nuclei". He classifies all the tonal sequences of disyllabic and trisyllabic words into six tonal nuclei respectively, attributing to each a main (i.e. tonemic) representative and several subsidiary (i.e. allotonic) representatives. He notices that there is a correspondence between these two sets of tonal nuclei, the bitonal and the tritonal, which suggests that the tonal morphology of all words, regardless of the number of syllables, could be described in terms of six basic tone patterns.

I would identify the 5.4./3.5.4. nucleus with the 7.4./3.7.4. nucleus (as he himself suggests) as the LH toneme pattern, and the 3.2.9. nucleus with the 3.4.9. nucleus (attributing the difference to upstep and downstep) together with the 3.9. nucleus as the HL toneme pattern. I would regard the 3.4. nucleus illustrated by the inflected monosyllabic demonstratives, /k’d’le:/, /k’d’le:/, /k’d’le:/, as a sequence of two high tonemes on different tonal stops and not as a tonal nucleus at all. Thus I would reduce Doke's six tonal nuclei to four toneme patterns: LL, LH, HL, HL. Doke describes the tonal sequences in great detail, giving eight variations of the 3.9. bitonal nucleus and twenty-eight variations of the 3.2.9./3.4.9. tritonal nucleus, all of which I would describe as allotonic variations of the HL toneme pattern. Doke's analysis is essentially tonetic and he does not attempt to set up the tone patterns as toneme patterns and the toneme patterns as allomorphs of tonal morphemes. My investigation into tonal morphology, however, shows that the toneme patterns LL, LH, HL, are the normal allomorphs of the tonal morphemes [LL], [LH], [HL], and the toneme pattern HLL, an allomorph in complementary distribution with the allomorphs HH and LH of the tonal morpheme [HH].

Under "Tonal Morphology"\(^3\) Doke deals briefly with noun inflection and derivation, but the material is too scanty for the grammatical patterns to emerge. He does not notice tonal displacement which is such an important factor. One of its effects is the
overlapping of tonal allomorphs in certain sets, e.g. /izinkâmbâ+/
(clay pots) where HLL is an allomorph of the [LL] morpheme condi-
tioned by tonal displacement and penultimate length, and
/izinkâsâ+/(oxen) where HLL is the penultimate length allomorph
of the [HLL] morpheme; /ngêntamb/ (by means of string) where HL
is an allomorph of the [LL] morpheme conditioned by tonal dis-
placement, and /ngênsâlj/ (by means of a wagon) where HL is the
normal allomorph of the [HLL] morpheme. In my Master's thesis I
described the tonal grammar of nouns only; the classification of
nouns into tone classes according to the toneme pattern of the final
two syllables, the determination of prefix tones, prefixal and
suffixed inflection and derivation. With regard to the classifi-
cation of nouns, I would now describe it as "according to the tonal
morpheme of the final two syllables of the simple stem", for iden-
tical toneme patterns sometimes represent different tonal morphemes
as in the case of the examples /izinkâmbâ+/ and /izinkâsâ+/ above,
and the final two syllables of inflected stems of nouns of differ-
ent tone classes sometimes have identical tonal morphemes, e.g.
/ângângânhâ+ and /ângângânhâ+, the locative inflections of
/ângânhâ/(friendship) and /ângângânhâ/(childhood) respectively.

Contributions to the study of tonal grammar have also been
made by Rycroft and Knappert. Rycroft in his study of nouns
discusses the morphophonological relationship between stems and
prefixes, and classifies nouns into four major tone classes ac-
cording to the toneme patterns of stems and prefixes in both simple
and derived or inflected forms. In the course of his article he
makes several stimulating suggestions relating to the tonal grammar
of nouns and other parts of speech. Knappert in his study of tri-
syllabic verbs shows that although these verbs at first sight fall
into eight groups, tonomorphologically they fall into two tone
classes. He discusses tonal grammar in tonetic terms, marking
nonsignificant rising tones due to consonantal influence and non-
significant falling tones due to final cadence, but not the sig-
ificant upsteps and downsteps, which somewhat obscures the grammat-
ical patterns.

The most complete statement of the tonal grammar of a Southern
Bantu language is Letele's statement for Southern Suthu. He
cross-classifies words into two tone classes according to the tones
of the initial stem syllables and four tone classes according to
the tones of the final couplet of stem syllables. Such cross-
classification is possible in Zulu, but seeing that the former are
determined by the latter, the fourfold classification is sufficient. Letele describes in detail the role of tone in morphological inflection and derivation, and in syntactical relationship. He treats in terms of "tone patterns" rather than the tonal morphemes they represent, but the pattern of contrasts between tonal morphemes is nevertheless discernible. The next most complete statement is Westphal's study of Venda tonal grammar. He likewise treats in terms of tone pattern or "tonal profiles", and the pattern of contrasts is discernible notwithstanding the great effect of tonal context on the tonal profiles of Venda words. Westphal regards the establishment of tonal morphemes as outside the scope of his study, which he modestly presents as simply a compendium of tonal profiles (p.173).

Lanham has published a small amount of material on Xhosa tonal grammar. Although his concern is the identification of tonemes, he considers that "some explanation of the workings of tonal morphology is necessary, if only for the reason that the certain identification of tonemes is sometimes assisted by reference to tonomorphemes" (p.99). He also makes a statement of great importance when he writes that "there is no permanent association between tonemes and the segmental constituents of syllables but rather between the tonemes themselves within patterns" (p.98). Tone is imposed rather than inherent, and it operates primarily at the morphological level. Its lexical significance is generally a by-product of its grammatical significance. In an earlier article he stated "Xhosa makes grammatical rather than lexical use of tone", but he omits this statement from the revised version of his article. In an earlier article I also stated that "grammatical tone is more important than lexical tone", but I too omit this statement here. It is impossible to weigh the relative importance of lexical and grammatical tone.

With verbs tone is grammatically imposed but nevertheless lexically significant; the tone pattern HLH of the verb /sithandé/ indicates the present subjunctive of a verb of the H conjugation meaning "to like", whereas the tone pattern LHl of the verb /alitšändh/ indicates the present subjunctive of a verb of the L conjugation meaning "to wind". With nouns tone is grammatically imposed but nevertheless lexically significant with prefix tones, e.g. /lešangane > lešangané+/ (friendship) and /lešěngane > šešangané+/ (childhood), where the lexical distinction on locative inflection is apparent only in the prefix tones, and lexically inherent but nevertheless grammatically significant with stem tones, e.g. /izínqolá > izínqolalah > izínqablandyana/ (wagons), where tonal declension on diminutive derivation is determined by the stem tones.
Lanham presents the tonomorphological classes of Xhosa nouns and verbs with disyllabic stems. The former fall into five groups \(^{1}\) and the latter into three groups \(^{11}\). He does not indicate that all words fall into these tone classes, but the position is extremely likely to be the same in Xhosa as it is in Zulu. He also presents part of the tonal conjugation of the verb, showing that the toneme patterns are substituted from tense to tense. He uses the term "toneme pattern" because his analysis of tonal morphology is tentative. My analysis establishes these "toneme patterns" as allomorphs of tonal morphemes.

The tonal morpheme of the final couplet of syllables of the simple stem is the most significant unit in Zulu tonal morphology, as it determines the tonal declensions of nominals and the tonal conjugations of verbs \(^{111}\). I term this unit the final tonal morpheme or FTM. Doke's analysis foreshadows this conclusion, and I would describe the tonal sequences of all words in terms of five such units: LL, LH, HH, HL, and HH\(^{iv}\). Regarding the Suthu languages, Tucker \(^{15}\) writes under tonal morphology, the declension of nouns, that "every noun is classified according to the tones of its final two syllables", and under tonal morphology, the conjugation of verbs, that "only the last two syllables of the verb take part in tonal conjugation". In a later article \(^{16}\) he discusses the marking of "the four tone patterns of Suthu words" and "the four tone patterns of Nguni words", regardless of the number of syllables. This is an oversimplification, but there is no doubt as to the general validity of Tucker's observations.

---

1. The fifth group is very small; it has the toneme pattern HL-HH finally and nonfinally, which Westphal \(^{13}\) confirms. In Zulu there is also an exceptional fifth group with toneme patterns HH\(^{2}\)HH and HL-LH nonfinally and the penultimate length allomorph HH\(^{4}\) finally.

2. The third group has the infinitive toneme pattern HL-HLL, which Westphal \(^{14}\) confirms. It does not occur in Zulu except perhaps in the dialect extremities which I have excluded from this study.

3. With verbs where there are no simple stems, it is best to treat the infinitive form as basic, for it is a nominal simple form as well as a verbal inflected form.

4. This last unit is far rarer. It differs in its final allomorph: [HH] > HLH\(^{+}\) as distinct from [HH] > HH\(^{+}\).
By means of the final tonal morpheme or FTM all nominals are classified into four tone classes or declensions and all verbs into two tone classes or conjugations. It seems that this classification according to FTM is peculiar to the languages of the Nguni and Suthu groups. Beuchat reports on Tsonga nouns that there are four possibilities of tone pattern for disyllabic stems, eight for trisyllabic stems, sixteen for quadrisyllabic stems, which she sets up as tonal morphemes. Westphal reports the same possibilities of tone pattern in Venda nouns, but he does not attempt to set up tonal morphemes. Zulu nouns fall into four tone classes regardless of the total pattern. Rycroft gives ten groups of Zulu nouns, but whereas five of them apply only to "non-derivative trisyllabic stems" of which he supplies only one example for each group (I would regard these stems as exceptions), and whereas one of them consists of stems that are so "extremely rare" that he supplies only three examples (I would regard these stems as constituting a fifth exceptional class), the remaining four groups account for the rest of the nouns in the language, thus confirming the fourfold classification according to FTM.

Lanham writes, "The study of the configuration of the large number of tonomorphs in the processes of inflection and derivation reveals a most intricate system of tonal grammar which is still largely unexplored" (p.96). The exploration of this system was the main object of my research, and its description is the main object of my thesis.

5.2. The tripartite basis

The tripartite basis of Zulu grammatical structure is so fundamental in tonal grammar that three different tonal systems are apparent: a nominal system of tonal morphology with morphemes composed of inherent tonemes (except prefixes), a verbal system of tonal morphology with morphemes composed of imposed tonemes (except certain prefixes), and with particles a system of inherent tonemes without tonal morphology.

With nominal stems and suffixes tone is inherent, but these inherent tonemes are not permanent constituents: on suffixal extension they are subject to substitution according to the determination of the final tonal morpheme, e.g. /\'am\'anzl+ (water) > /\'am\'anz\'n\'lina+ (small amount of water). With nominal prefixes tone is imposed, with

---

1 She notes, however, that the language does not seem to use all these possibilities.
gender-number-person prefixes according to tonal morphemes determined by the final tonal morphemes, and with case extra prefixes according to independent tonal morphemes. With verbal stems and affixes tone is imposed according to tonal conjugation, by the substitution of tonal morphemes from tense to tense. With certain prefixes\(^1\) tone is inherent, e.g. /ugá/ (positive potential), /ugá:/ (negative potential). Particles have inherent tonemes and there is a permanent relationship between segmental and suprasegmental constituents of syllables. Here there is no tonal grammar therefore.

Thus the three basic grammatical categories of the language have three different tonal systems. This state pertains to all Nguni languages. Lanham\(^2\) states for Xhosa that "no inherent toneme patterns can be associated with verbal morphemes" (p.102); and so, although he does not explicitly state it, he implies in contrast that "inherent toneme patterns can be associated with nominal morphemes". He also states that "the workings of tonal grammar are basically similar in all (Nguni) languages" (p.120). Such a state is evidently not unique, for Hida\(^3\) observes that in some languages there is a fundamental rift in grammatical structure between morphemes with inherent tone and morphemes without it, between noun stems consisting of segmental and suprasegmental phonemes and verb stems consisting of segmental phonemes only. Southern Suthu\(^4\) is similar to the Nguni languages in this respect, but in Venda\(^5\) the basis of tonal structure is apparently inherent tone throughout. In Zulu we seem to see the effects of linguistic drift from a system of inherent tone (represented by particles, perhaps the most primitive part of the language), through an intermediate system where tone is only partly inherent (represented by nominals), to a system of imposed tone (represented by verbals). From the point of view of tonal grammar it is irrelevant whether the tonal morphemes are composed of inherent or imposed tonemes; they function nevertheless with both lexical and grammatical significance.

From the publications on the subject, it appears that the tonal structure of Bantu languages in general is a matter of the morphotonological interrelationships between inherent tonemes. Thus Sharman\(^6\) describes the tonal structure of Bemba in terms of inherent structural tonemes and representational rules, in terms of morphotonology without tonomorphology. He observes, however, that "in some tenses a total pattern overrides the inherent tones of the

---

\(^1\) Never the gender-number-person prefixes.
Richardson describes the tonal structure of Sukuma in terms of the "tonal distinctiveness" of individual syllables. A syllable with the "tonal distinctiveness" of a high toneme never bears it; it is borne on a following syllable, one, two or three syllables later, according to rules. However, there are "tonally neutral" syllables, and certain tenses have tone patterns "regardless of the tonal distinctiveness of the constituents": "these tenses are extra systemic --- (and therefore) outside the scope of this study". This type of tense is not "extra systemic" in Zulu. Meussen interprets Carter's Tonga material similarly in terms of inherent tone; some syllables are tonally "determinant" and others "neutral", the former determining high tonemes on the latter, according to rules. Such an interpretation is impossible in Zulu. Meussen himself observes that object infixes have no inherent distinctive tone in the Nguni and Suthu languages, and this observation applies to subject prefixes and indeed to verb stems themselves. In his recent study of Ganda linguistic structure, Cole sets up tonal morphemes regardless of whether they are based on inherent or imposed tone; the question is irrelevant where there is a fully-fledged system of tonal morphology. I see no alternative to the description of Zulu tonal structure in terms of an independent system of tonal morphology.

5.3. Tonal Morphology
5.3.0. Tonal Morphemes
5.3.0.1. The final tonal morpheme (FTM)

The FTM of the final couplet is the most significant unit in tonal morphology. The patterns of contrast between FTM's in nominal declension and verbal conjugation determine nominal and verbal tone classes, and these contrasts are significant both lexically and grammatically, e.g. /sisinda/ (we escape) and /sisinda/ (we smear) (indicative mood), /sisindé/ (let us escape) and /sisindé/ (let us smear) (subjunctive mood), whereas the contrasts between other tonal morphemes indicate grammatical distinctions only, e.g. /husindé, uhuśindé/ (you, he has escaped), /husindé, hesindé/ (you, he has smeared).

Nominal ITM's and MTM's have a certain amount of lexical significance, but this significance derives from the fact that they are determined by the FTM's. Verbal ITM's and MTM's have lexical significance in certain instances, but this does not invalidate the statement relating
to FTM's. The predominance of the FTM is well illustrated in nominal tonal declension, where it obliterates inherent stem tonemes, e.g. /imvulathi > imvulalanga > imvulanyana/ (rain and diminutive derivations).

The boundaries between tonal morphemes are marked by tonal steps, except where they occur between low tonemes. The FTM is distinctively marked by a tonal downstep, either overt (HL) or covert (HIH), or by an overt tonal upstep (IH). Covert tonal upsteps (H"H) never mark FTM's and covert tonal downsteps (H'H) mark FTM's only. It is only when the boundary lies between low tonemes (LL) that the FTM is not distinctively marked. The following table shows how the transitions to FTM's are reflected tonologically:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FTM [HH]</td>
<td>L-LH, H-HHL, L/H-HHL. (L-HH does not occur).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FTM [HL]</td>
<td>L/H-LH.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The most significant fact is that the sequences H-HH and H-HL occur as H-HH and H-HL. It is only with particles that such sequences as HHH and HHL occur, indicating that here there is no tonal morphology.

5.3.0.2. The initial tonal morpheme (ITM)

The ITM's of nominals are determined by the FTM's of the simple stems according to tonal dissimilation: FTM's with initial high tonemes condition the ITM's [HI] with nouns and [L] with other nominals, and FTM's with initial low tonemes condition the ITM's [LI] with nouns and [H] with other nominals. In reflecting this distinction the ITM's have a certain amount of lexical significance, which assumes importance when this distinction disappears in nominal declension, e.g. /amakhohlani < amakhohlá/ (elders), /amakhosini < amakhosi/ (chiefs), especially when words are phonally identical, e.g. /sunganini < sungané/ (friendship), /sunganini < sungané/ (childhood).

The ITM of extra prefix inflection is generally [H]. With nouns it is so unless the extra prefix coincides with the initial vowel of the noun, in which case it adopts its toneme,

1 The toneme cluster FTM [HLL] of the perfect suffix /él/ (with vowel length and/or stress) is an exception to the rule that covert upsteps never mark FTM's, e.g. /élama: ~6élf"mél/. Furthermore, this suffix is not subject to final tonal assimilation to final vowel elision.
120

e.g. /ku+ umuntu > kumuntu/ (to a person),
/njenga+ umuntu > njengomuntu/ (as a person);
/m+ yená > kityenà ~ kityá/ (to him),
/yhi+ yená > (nguyénà ~ nguyéná) ~ nguyé/ (by him).

The ITM's of verbs are independent of the FTM's. Like the latter
they substitute from tense to tense according to tonal conjugation,
but unlike the latter they contrast only from tense to tense and not
from tone class to tone class, except in certain instances. Here
they have lexical significance, especially where there is no FTM
contrast, as in the independent negative tenses of the indicative
mood,
e.g. /66asindlj (they do not escape, they are
not a burden),
/66ayi'sindlj/ (they do not smear).
The object concord eliminates this contrast,
e.g. /ay16a. 1 sindlj (it is not too heavy for them),
/66ayi'sindlj/ (they do not smear it).

5.3.0.3. The medial tonal morpheme (MTM)

With nominals the MTM's A and B account for the tonemes of
syllables intervening between those covered by ITM's and those
covered by FTM's. They occur only with polysyllabic stem nominals,
where the FTM &HL& determines the A allomorphs L ~ LL ~ LLL, &c.,
and the FTM &LL& the B allomorphs H ~ LH ~ LLH, &c., depending upon
the number of syllables, according to tonal dissimilation. Tonal
assimilation affects the A allomorphs as follows: H ~ (HL ~ HH) ~
(LLL ~ HLL), and the B allomorphs as follows: H ~ H'HH ~ (HLH ~ HHH),
e.g. /amB.tksa$ (chiefs) > /amákhsáñá ~ ámkhó'sñáñ/ (diminutive)
> /amákhsáñáñ ~ ámkhó'sñáñ / (locative diminutive),
cf. /izlns1zwaj (young men) > /izlna1zwáñá > /6znaizwáñá+/, where
tonal assimilation is blocked by depressors.

With verbs the MTM's A and B are determined by the FTM's &HL&
and &LL& respectively, but the conditioning factor for allomorphs
is not phonological but morphological. Tonal assimilation has the
same effects again.

Verbs of tone class I with FTM &HL& use MTM A with allomorph L+,
e.g. /sly66onlsisa+ (we see thoroughly - LLL allomorph),
/6ly66onlsisa+ (they see thoroughly - HLL allomorph due to
tonal assimilation).

Verbs of tone class II with FTM &LL& use MTM B with allomorphs
L+ ~ (L ~ L+H) ~ (H ~ L+H):
The $L^+$ allomorph is the norm,
e.g. /slyāl̩lmislah+ (we plow thoroughly - LLL allomorph),
/slllmislah+ (we have plowed - L allomorph).
The $L \sim L^+H$ allomorph is conditioned by object concords in certain tenses,
e.g. /slyyāllmislah+ (we plow it thoroughly - LLLH allomorph),
/slllmislah+ (we have plowed it - LH allomorph).
The $H \sim L^+H$ allomorph is conditioned by third person subject concords in certain tenses,
e.g. /slyallmislah+ (they plow thoroughly - LLH allomorph),
/slllmislah+ (they have plowed - H allomorph).
The $H \sim L^+H$ allomorph is conditioned by all subject concords in certain tenses,
e.g. /slllmislah/ (we help to plow (dep.) - H allomorph),
cf. /slllmislah/ (we help to plow (indep.) - L allomorph).
Here the $\sim$ has grammatical (morphological) significance.

Verbs of tone class II with FTM $[HL]$ use MTM B with the same allomorphs as MTM B except that the high tone is realized on non-depressor antepenultimate syllables only. This usage is a survival of the use of MTM B with FTM $[LL]$ described above, as the subjunctive past tense shows,
e.g. /sāzlkhēthēlah ~ sāzlkhēthēlah/ (and we chose for them),
cf. /sāzlÎhēthēlah/ (and we brought for them - tone class I),
cf. /sāzlgesēlah ~ sāzlgesēlah/ (and we washed for them - tone class II, with depessor antepenultimate syllable).
The use of MTM B with FTM $[HL]$ in the indicative negative tenses suggests that they also once used MTM B with FTM $[LL]$,  
e.g. /jasỳf'khēt+hāngh/ (we did not choose it - tone class II),
cf. /jasỳf'lāngh/ (we did not bring it - tone class I),
cf. /jasỳlgēszāngh/ (we did not wash it - tone class II, with depessor antepenultimate syllable).
Here the MTM has slight lexical significance.

With verbs there is also the MTM C, which is used by verbs of both tone classes in tenses incorporating infixes with inherent tonemes. Its allomorphs are $L^+$ without object concords and $(H \sim HL^+) \sim L^+$ with object concords, according to the presence or absence of penultimate length,
e.g. /bkāngāl̩m̩i ~ bkāngālm̩i+/ (not to run),
/bkāngāvāli ~ bkāngāyāvāli+/ (not to shut/shut it - t.cl.II),
/bkāngābāli ~ bkāngāyābāli+/ (not to write/write it - t.cl.I). Here the MTM has grammatical (syntactical) significance.
5.3.0.4. Contraction of tonal morphemes

Tonal morphemes may be contracted to cover a single syllable. The present perfect suffix /ə/ and the demonstrative suffix /yə/ illustrate the contraction of the /HL/ tonal morpheme. The noun prefixes /1ː~1ː/ and /ʊː~ʊː/ illustrate the contraction of the /HL/ and /LL/ tonal morphemes respectively. It is not always possible to demonstrate that toneme clusters are the result of tonal morpheme contraction, and sometimes it is certainly not so, e.g. the /HLL+ allomorph of the /HH/ tonal morpheme.

5.3.0.5. Expansion of tonal morphemes

Certain tonal morphemes are capable of expansion to cover several syllables. I indicate the toneme of expansion by a plus sign, e.g. the ITM for nouns of tone class I is /L+H/, e.g. /išilihlah/ (bush) /išilihlahá/ (diminutive) /išilihlahánhá/ (double diminutive). This potentiality is also a feature of the MTM, which can expand to cover any number of syllables.

5.3.1. Tonomorphological classes

The three basic tonomorphological categories parallel the three basic morphological categories, but the subdivisions of the tonomorphological categories into tone classes do not parallel the subdivisions of the morphological categories into parts of speech. Nominals are subdivided into five parts of speech and five tone classes, but the classifications cross one another so that there are five tone classes of nouns, of adverbs, &c. 1. Verbs undergo no morphological subdivision so that there is only one verbal part of speech, namely verbs, but there are two verbal tone classes or conjugations. Particles have no morphology and no tonal morphology. Phonologically ideophones are set apart from interjections, but tonologically these two parts of speech are not distinct. Doke 31 cross-classifies ideophones according to the number of syllables and according to the tonemes of syllables, e.g. monosyllabic ideophones are classified tonologically into /HI, H and L, disyllabic ideophones into /LL/ (the great majority), /HI, HL, HH, LL, and there is no reason why the toneme combinations /HLL and /HHL should not also occur. Fivaz 32 shows that whereas monosyllabic ideophones are fairly evenly divided into /HI, H and L, 80% of disyllabic and polysyllabic ideophones have low tonemes on all syllables. I have no more to say with regard to particles in this study.

1 The fifth tone class is a small exceptional class.
5.3.1.1. Nominal tone classes or declensions

(1) The five tone classes of nominals are determined by the FTM's of the simple disyllabic stems as follows:-

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
<th>III</th>
<th>IV</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in'nyanga (doctor)</td>
<td>in'nyanga (moon)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fâzi (woman)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fânda (boy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hâzhi (aloë)</td>
<td>hâzhi (kaffir-corn)</td>
<td>i:s:i'hâlâda (earth)</td>
<td>i:s:i'hâlâ (breasts)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bh'ngâné (friendship)</td>
<td>bh'ngâné (banana-grove)</td>
<td>i:s:i'hâvâ (owl)</td>
<td>i:s:i'hâ (childhood)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isìnhâlih (chair)</td>
<td>isìnhâlih (time)</td>
<td>i:s:i'hânlâ (beg)</td>
<td>i:'ghâwâ (cattle-kraal)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isìnhâlih (hush)</td>
<td>isìnhâlih (elder)</td>
<td>i:n'kósí (position)</td>
<td>i:n'sizâ (warrior)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indêbâ (man)</td>
<td>indêbâ (girl)</td>
<td>i:n'kóbâ (chief)</td>
<td>i:n'sizâ (young man)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amâbâ (men)</td>
<td>amâbâ (girls)</td>
<td>i:n'kóshâ (chiefs)</td>
<td>i:n'sizâ (young men)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i:n'nyâni (bird)</td>
<td>i:n'nyâni (beast)</td>
<td>i:n'kánsí (bull)</td>
<td>i'n'dânâ (headman)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isolà (birds)</td>
<td>isolà (oxen)</td>
<td>i:s:i'khâbâ (children)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>isolà (affairs)</td>
<td>isolà (rains)</td>
<td>i:s:i'khâbâ (places)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>amânà (leg)</td>
<td>amânà (arm)</td>
<td>i:s:i'khônâ (chief)</td>
<td>i:s:i'khônâ (spear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>âmía (river)</td>
<td>âmía (mother)</td>
<td>i:s:i'zhâmâ (body)</td>
<td>i:s:i'zhâmâ (males)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f:ghâ (hoe)</td>
<td>f:ghâ (blood)</td>
<td>i:'ghândâ (head)</td>
<td>i:'ghâshâ (horse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f:kâ (clay pot)</td>
<td>f:kâ (feather)</td>
<td>i:'ghâthî (forest)</td>
<td>i:'gâlâ (calabash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f:ndâ (way)</td>
<td>f:ndâ (wall)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fâdâ (chest)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fâdâ (calabash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>i:nghôb (blanket)</td>
<td>i:nghôb (iron pot)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fâmâ (fat)</td>
<td>i:s:i'fâmâ (cold)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intâbb (string)</td>
<td>intâbb (letter)</td>
<td>i:n'gâlâ (field)</td>
<td>i:n'gâlâ (wagon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imbâb (axe)</td>
<td>imbâb (beads)</td>
<td>i:n'bhâlâ (pain)</td>
<td>i:n'bhâlâ (foot)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The fifth exceptional class consists of a few nouns only, which are almost entirely reduplications of depressor syllables, e.g. /f:ghâ/ (wagtail, type of bird), /f:nhâ/ (type of frog), /f:ndâ/ (type of porridge), /i:s:i'fâmâ/ (great heat), /i:s:i'fâmâ/ (wide expanse),

\[1\] Common pronunciations are /mzfâzi/, /mzfânh/, /mzfâl/, with /mf/ constituting a consonant cluster.
/áá'dláâá/ (type of assegai, cf. /áá/, ideophone of piercing),
/áá'háâhá/ (quick action, cf. /há/, interjection of surprise).

Similar reduplications of nondepressor syllables have evidently been
transferred to other tone classes, e.g. /táá'cíí/ (ear-rings, cf.
/táá'cíí/ (in Xhosa), /táá'qáá/ (pole-cats, cf. /táá'qáá/ in
Xhosa).

(ii) The allomorphs or morphotonemic variants of these FTM's are
as follows:

I. LL ~ (HL+ ~ HL) due to tonal displacement,
e.g. /lááháá/ (lááháá ~ lááháá) (chair/chaire).
II. LH ~ (HL+ ~ HL) due to tonal displacement,
e.g. /áápháá/ (áápháá ~ áápháá) (feather/feathers).
III. (HH ~ LH) ~ HL+, H determining HH and L determining LH,
e.g. (isi'fúáá ~ isi'fúáá) ~ (isi'fúáá, isi'fúáá) (chest/
chests).
IV. HL without variation,
e.g. /in'duná, ízinduná/ (induna/indunas).
V. (HH ~ LH) ~ HL+,
e.g. (in'gaxáá, izngaxáá) ~ (in'gaxáá, izngaxáá) (frog/frogs).

This table shows the degree and nature of allomorphic overlapping.
Further overlapping arises from the final tonal assimilation of
HL to HH and particularly of LH to LL, predominantly in quick speech.
Also note that there is tonologically no difference between HH after
a covert tonal downstep and LL after an overt tonal downstep, with
nondepressors.

(iii) The declensional FTM substitutions of these tone classes on
suffixal extension of the stem are as follows:

1 There is also the nonfinal tonal displacement allomorph HL used
only with monosyllabic prefix nouns inflected by certain extra
prefixes, e.g. /ìn'káá/ (ox) > /ngáákáá/ (by an ox), cf.
/ngáákáá/ (penultimate length allomorph); and the nonfinal
allomorph LH conditioned by a depressor in the antepenultimate
syllable, e.g. /in'káá ~ ím'váá/ ~ ím'váá/ (rain), where, o
of the bracket alternatives, male speakers prefer the former and
female speakers the latter.
Single Extension

II. LH > ) 
   L-HL ~ H-'HL

III. HH > ) 
   L-HL ~ H-'HL

IV. HL > ) 
   H-LL ~ L-HL

V. LL > ) 
   "HL-HL

Examples:-

II. înkō'm (beast) > ēnkō'mān ii > ēnkō'ṃāṇāni iv
   inkō'tē (ear) > ēndīlōṇ iii > ēndīlōṇāṇāṇ

III. in'kā' (ox) > ēnkā'āṇ ii > ēnḳā'āṇāṇ̣ii
   in'vālō (rain) > ēnvālạ̄ṇ > ēnvālāṇāṇ̣iii

IV. in'gōl (wagon) > ēṇg̣ōlạ̄ṇ > ēng̣ōlāṇāṇ̣
   in'gạ̄ṇ (child) > ēngạ̄ṇạ̣̄i ii > ēngāṇāṇāṇ̣iii

V. in'xā'ng̣ (frog) > ēṇx̣ā'ng̣āṇāṇ̣ (diminutive)

Note:

(a) This table shows that on single extension the fourfold FTM contrast is reduced to a twofold contrast and that on double extension the FTM contrast disappears completely. It may seem, therefore, that nominals progress from class to class on suffixal extension and all finally arrive at tone class I: III /āṃā'ḳḥạṇ/ (chief) > IV /āṃā'ḳḥạṇāṇ̣ (chief's sons) > I /āṃā'ḳḥạṇāṇ̣ (chief's daughters). It is true that all singly extended nominals have only Ḥ and Ḷ FTMs and that all doubly extended nominals have only Ḷ̣̣̣ FTM, but it is not true that the former belong to only two tone classes and the latter to only one. Although the FTM is the main determinant of tone class, the ITM (initial tonal morpheme of the prefix) also provides an indication iv of this. With nouns the ITM is either Ḥ̣̣ or Ḷ̣̣ according to tonal dissimilation from the FTM: initial H stem toneme conditions Ḥ̣̣ ITM with HH allomorph due to tonal assimilation, and initial L stem toneme conditions

1 Tonal assimilation on antepenultimate syllable.

ii Tonal assimilation on pre-antepenultimate syllable.

iii Tonal displacement to penultimate syllable.

iv Except with monosyllabic prefixes.
ITM with LL allomorph due to tonal displacement. The significance of the ITM is due to the fact that it is not subject to substitution on suffixal extension, and so serves to indicate tone class membership,

\[ \text{e.g.} \]

II. /šamákhkhhlr/ (elders) > /šamákhkhhlán/ (diminutives)

III. /šamá'khái/ (chiefs) > /šamákhbsán/ (locative diminutives)

II. /šamákhbhán/ > /šamákhhsánt/ (locative diminutives)

III. /šamákhbsán/ > /šamákhbsán/n/ (diminutives)

II. /šamákhbhán/ > /šamákhbsán/ (locatives)

III. /šamákhbšán/ > /šamákhbsán/ (diminutives)

IV. /šamákhbšán/ > /šamákhbsán/ (locatives)

With other nominals the ITM provides no indication, but adjectives and adverbs seldom undergo suffixal extension, and pronouns and demonstratives virtually not at all.

(b) Disyllabic stem nominals do not differ whether the stems are derivative or nonderivative, but polysyllabic stem nominals do. Derivative stems show a twofold FTM contrast on single extension and no FTM contrast on double extension, so that the ITM assumes importance in both lexical and grammatical significance, e.g. /šamákhbhán/ belongs to tone class I and means "in friendship", /šamákhbhán/ belongs to tone class II and means "in childhood", but nonderivative stems show a fourfold FTM contrast. Here it may seem necessary to establish subsidiary tone classes to accommodate these nominals, but in fact it is only in tone class III that it is necessary to do so,

\[ \text{e.g.} \]

/šamákhbhán/ (beasts) > /šamákhbhán/ (small beast - regular derivation)

/šamákhbhán/ (calf - irregular derivation)

/šamákhbhán/ (soil), cf. /šamákhbhán/ (earth, world) (doubtful derivations)

/šamákhbhán/ (mother's brother), cf. /šamákhbhán/ (mother)

/šamákhbhán/ (wild plum) (nonderivative stems)

/šamákhbhán/ (long staff)

The question of the classification of these nominals (almost entirely nouns) is left to Chapter 6.

(c) Monosyllabic stem nominals belong to tone classes I and IV, those having a low toneme finally to tone class I and those having a high

1 This form show tonal displacement of the prefix high toneme and of the antepenultimate high toneme.
tonemes finally to tone class IV. Although the simple forms suggest that the former belong to tone class IV and the latter to tone class II, the evidence of the tonal morphemes in tonal declension on suffixal extension shows that this is not so:

I. /qédantb/ (persons) > /qédantwana > qédantwanyana/
   /izindab/ (houses) > /izindlwana > bizindlwanyana/
   /indab/ (house) > /indlwana > bndlwanyana/\(^1\)

IV. /imlthi/ (trees) > /im'ithhna > 6if'm'ithhna/
   /inzjá/ (dogs) > /inzjánh > 6inzjánhnya/
   /injá-ţhjá/ (dog) > /injánh > 6njánhnya/\(^1\)

In the simple forms, the final two tonemes constitute a pseudo-FTM of which the penultimate tone is an ITM tone and only the ultimate tone an FTM tone. This tone partially represents the bitonal FTM, L representing [LL\(^1\)] and H representing [HL\(^1\)]; it does not constitute a monoclonal FTM. Monosyllabic stem verbs also illustrate the pseudo-FTM and the partial representation of the bitonal FTM. Thus the singular of /inzjá/ (dogs) is not /inizjá/ but /inizjá/, cf. /inizjá/ (to this one), and effect of tonal assimilation on /imlthi/ (trees) is not /imf'mthhi/ but /imf'mthhi/ (they who are here).

It is only monosyllabic words such as the demonstrative /i\(^j\)/ and the adverb /i\(^j\)/, that have monoclonal FTM's. The monosyllabic stem adjectives /6hl1le/ (good) and /6d6/ (bad) belong to tone class IV, and /6d6b/ (tall ones, also nominal class 2) to tone class I. The adverbs /kål1lé/ (well) and /kål6i/ (badly) belong to tone class IV, and /phåå/ ~ phååb/ (above) and /phåå/ ~ phååb/ (ahead) to tone class I. The adverbs /phåå/ (well) and /phåå/ (badly) belong to both tone classes in free variation. The absolute pronoun /6bn/ (nominal class 2) belongs to tone class IV and the inclusive and exclusive pronouns /66nke : 66nkana, 66dwa > 66dwanaw/ to tone class I. The latter very rarely undergo extension and the former not at all.

Disyllabic initial vowel stem nouns do not behave as monosyllabic stem nouns but as disyllabic stem nouns with

\(^1\) Other nouns of tone class I: /hmUzi/ (kraal), /išitsi/ (dish),
   /išf/ (wild animal), /išw/ (country), /ištsi/ (stone),
   /irv/ (sheep).

\(^ii\) Other nouns of tone class IV: /u6us6/ (face), /išl6/ (disease),
   /išwi/ (word), /ingwé-ţingwe/ (leopard), /int6-ţiint6/ (thing).
monosyllabic prefixes,
e.g. /'a'manzi/ (water) > /a'manzánda/ > /a'manzánduyánda/ (in a little water),
/'tshándi/ (grass) > /tshándu/ (on the grass),
/'i'sándi/, /i'mándi/ (hand, hands) > /i'sándínyándu/, /i'mándínyándu/.

5.3.1.2. Verbal tone classes or conjugations

(1) The two tone classes of verbs are determined by the FTMs of the stems as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>EL and RH</td>
<td>LL and LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éona (see)</td>
<td>lima (plow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éonisina (make/help see)</td>
<td>limisina (make/help plow)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>éonisina (see thoroughly)</td>
<td>limisina (plow thoroughly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>letha (bring)</td>
<td>khetha (choose)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lethela (bring for)</td>
<td>khethela (choose for)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bala (write)</td>
<td>vala (shut)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>balela (write for/to)</td>
<td>valela (shut for/against)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dala (play)</td>
<td>vula (open)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lala (lie down)</td>
<td>hla (sit down, stay)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lalela (lie down on)</td>
<td>hla (sit down)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lalela (listen, listen to)</td>
<td>hleka (laugh, laugh at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thanda (like)</td>
<td>thanda (wind)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sinda (escape)</td>
<td>sinda (smear)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlanza (vomit)</td>
<td>hlanza (wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6opha (tie)</td>
<td>hlupha (worry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6oshwa (be tied)</td>
<td>hluphsha (be worried)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qala (begin)</td>
<td>hluphsha (get worried)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>qeda (finish - trans.)</td>
<td>gcina (finish - intrans.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6uza (ask)</td>
<td>6aza (carve)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cela (request)</td>
<td>6ala (count)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6eka (place)</td>
<td>beka (watch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6ekalela (pile up)</td>
<td>bekana (watch one another)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngena (go in)</td>
<td>qhufa (drive on)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ngenisina (bring in)</td>
<td>qhufeska (processed)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phuma (go out)</td>
<td>khupha (take out)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gwaaza (stab)</td>
<td>hláza (stab)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funda (read, learn)</td>
<td>6amba (catch)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundisa (teach)</td>
<td>6anjwa (be caught)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundela (read to)</td>
<td>6ambeka (get caught)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fundisana (teach one another)</td>
<td>6ambela (catch tightly)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[1\] In the Zululand dialect this verb belongs to tone class I.
I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>HL and HH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>hamba (travel)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>funa (want)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thenga (buy)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>thuma (send)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zuza (earn)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sebenza (work)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phumula (rest)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khathala (get tired)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sumana (find)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6aleka (run away)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LL and LH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fika (arrive)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gqoka (dress)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gonga (praise)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vuma (agree)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>goza (wash)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sendela (approach)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phuthuma (hurry)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fiphala (get dark)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hlangana (meet)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>giJima (run)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) The allomorphs or morphotonic variants of these FTH's are as follows:

I. HL without variation,
   e.g. /ulai66na/ (to see), /ukdy166nA/ (to see it).
   /Siy66nA~s66nA/ (we see).
   /66Y166nA~666nA/ (they see).

   (HL ~ LL) ~ HL+
   e.g. /ukdy66nh/ (not to write).
   /ukdy166nh+/ (not to write it).
   /6y166nh~y166nh+/ (write it).
   /6ryf166nA~6ryf166nA/ (they seeing it).
   /6ryf166nA~6ryf166nA/ (let us see it).

II. (LL ~ (HL+ ~ HL)) ~ HL
   e.g. /ulil66/ (to plow), /ukdy1l66/ (to plow it).
   /Siy66/ (we plow).
   /6y66~6l66/ (they have plowed).
   /66ul66+/ (they have shut) (tonal displacement).
   /66ul66+/ (they have washed) (no tonal displacement).

The allomorph HL is conditioned by such factors as subject concords and object concords in certain tenses.

1 In the Natal Coast dialect this verb belongs to tone class II.

2 There is also the nonfinal tonal displacement allomorph HL used only with monosyllabic stem verbs with object concord in the subjunctive present positive tense, e.g. /si'ylil6/ siy1l6/ (let us, let them eat it), cf. /si'ylil6/ siy1l6/ (penultimate length allomorph); and the nonfinal allomorph LH conditioned by a depressor in the antepenultimate syllable, e.g. /siy66h/ (let us write it), whereas, of the bracket alternatives, male speakers prefer the former and female speakers the latter.
The allomorph HL is conditioned by the subject concord without object concord in the subjunctive present positive tense with disyllabic stem verbs only, e.g. /silmabh/ (let us plow).

This table shows the degree and nature of allomorphic overlapping. Further overlapping arises from the final tonal assimilation of HL to HH and particularly of LH to LL, predominantly in quick speech. Also note that there is tonologically no difference between HH after a covert tonal downstep and LL after an overt tonal downstep, with nondepressors.

(iii) The conjugational FTM substitutions of these tone classes, regardless of the number of stem syllables, are as follows: 1

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{I.} & \text{II} \\
\hline
\text{HL} & \text{contrasting with LL} \\
\hline
\text{I.} & \text{II} \\
\text{infinitive positive:} & \\
\text{ukû'yinû (to see)} & \text{ukû'yinû (to plow)} \\
\text{ukû'yinû (+ obj. conc.)} & \text{ukû'yinû (+ obj. conc.)} \\
\text{ukûðûðûðû (make them see)} & \text{ukûðûðûðû (make them plow)} \\
\text{ukûðûðûðû (shut for him)} & \text{ukûðûðûðû (wash for him)} \\
\end{array}
\]

Note effect of object concord.

\[
\begin{array}{c|c}
\text{III. 2a: indicative present perfect, independent positive:} & \\
\text{alûûûûûû (we)} & \text{alûûûûûû (we)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (+ obj. conc.)} & \text{alûûûûûû (+ obj. conc.)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (they)} & \text{alûûûûûû (they)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (+ obj. conc.)} & \text{alûûûûûû (+ obj. conc.)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (choose for him)} & \text{alûûûûûû (choose for him)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (listen)} & \text{alûûûûûû (approach)} \\
\text{alûûûûûû (watch one another)} & \\
\end{array}
\]

The headings on the margin indicate mood-tense-aspect: III 2c indicates indicative mood, present tense, future aspect (see classification of tenses under 4.3.3.2.). The asterisks indicate morphotonic change, except in the case of FTM /HH/, where it is impossible to say whether HH or LH is the norm.

---

1 The headings on the margin indicate mood-tense-aspect: III 2c indicates indicative mood, present tense, future aspect (see classification of tenses under 4.3.3.2.). The asterisks indicate morphotonic change, except in the case of FTM /HH/, where it is impossible to say whether HH or LH is the norm.
Note effect of object concord and third person subject concord. Only verbs with disyllabic stems show this contrast; polysyllabic stem verbs use FTM [LL] throughout.

III 2b: indicative present imperfect, independent positive:

- slyby66n̤ (~ sly66n̤ (we))
- slyby166n̤ (~ sly166n̤ (+ obj., conc.))
- slyby6bn̤ish (~ sly6bn̤ish)
- slyby16bn̤ish (~ sly16bn̤ish)
- 6̄ȳ66n̤a (~ 6̄ȳ66n̤a (they))
- 6̄ȳȳ166n̤a (~ 6̄ȳȳ166n̤a (+ obj., conc.))
- 6̄ȳ4̄6bn̤ish (~ 6̄ȳ6bn̤ish)
- 6̄ȳ4̄ȳ16bn̤ish (~ 6̄ȳ4̄ȳ16bn̤ish)

Note effect of object concord and third person subject concord.

III 2b: indicative present imperfect, dependent positive:

- sl66n̤ (we) 6̄66n̤ (they)
- siyi66n̤ (+ obj. conc.)
- sl6bn̤ish (we) 6̄6bn̤ish (they)

Note effect of subject concord: only verbs with polysyllabic stems show the contrast. The use of FTM [HL] (a form) by verbs of tone class I is alternative to the use of FTM [HH] (b form). The latter is the standard form, but the former is widely used with polysyllabic stem verbs.

III 2c: indicative present future, indep./dep., pos./neg.

- slyby66n̤ (pos.)
- slyby6bn̤ish (neg.)
- haib66n̤a (+ obj. conc.)
- haiby6bn̤ish (+ obj. conc.)
- haiby6bn̤ish

Note effect of object concord.

1 The stems /66nis/ and /limis/ are transitive; therefore they do not normally occur finally without object concord, as here.
IV 1: subjunctive past tense, positive and negative:

sa66na, sa66nisa (pos.)
sa66na, sa66nisa (pos.)
sangar66ná, sangar66nisa (neg.)
sangar66ná, sangar66nisa (neg.)

Only verbs with polysyllabic stems show the contrast. The use of FTM [LL] (a form) by verbs of tone class II is alternative to the use of FTM [HL] (b form).

V 1: potential present tense, positive and negative:

singa66na, singa66nisa (pos.)
singa66na, singa66nisa (pos.)
single66ná, single66nisa (neg.)
single66ná, single66nisa (neg.)
single66límá, single66límisa (cause to write)
single66límá, single66límisa (cause to wash)
single66límá, single66límisa (pass.)
single66límá, single66límisa (pass.)

Only verbs with polysyllabic stems show the contrast. The use of FTM [LL] (a form) by verbs of tone class II is alternative to the use of FTM [HL] (b form).

I: infinitive negative:

ukángboní ~ ukángboní+ ukángboní ~ ukángboní+
ukángboní+ (+ obj. conc.) ukángboní+ (+ obj. conc.)

II: imperative singular with object concord:

y166ná ~ y166ná+ y166ná ~ y166ná+
y166ná ~ y166ná+ (write it) y166ná ~ y166ná+ (write it)
y166ná ~ y166ná+ (write it) y166ná ~ y166ná+ (write it)

Note the contrast on object concord.

III 1: indicative past tense, indep./dep. positive:

s66ná ~ s66ná+ s66ná ~ s66ná+
s66ná+ (+ obj. conc.) s66ná+ (+ obj. conc.)

III 2b: indicative present imperfect, dependent negative:

singa66ná ~ singa66ná+ s66ná ~ s66ná+
singa66ná+ (+ obj. conc.) s66ná+ (+ obj. conc.)

The two forms are in free variation, but the former is sometimes said to be "better".

The object concord displaces its high toneme in the bracket alternative.
IV 2: subjunctive present tense positive with object concord:

\[ \text{síyi'6óné} \sim \text{síyi'6ónè}^+ \quad \text{sí"yílmé} \]
\[ \text{sízl6óné} \sim \text{sízl6ónè}^+ \quad \text{sízlímè}^* \sim \text{sízlímè}^* \]
\[ \text{sízl6hàlé} \sim \text{sízl6hàlé}^+ \quad \text{write} \quad \text{si"zívlálé} \quad \text{(shut)} \]

Note the contrast on object concord.

IV 2: subjunctive present tense negative:

\[ \text{singa6óni} \sim \text{singa6óni}^+ \quad \text{singa6ílmí} \]
\[ \text{singa6óni}^+ (+ \text{obj. conc.}) \quad \text{singa6ílmí}^* (+ \text{obj. conc.}) \]

V 1: potential present tense, negative:

\[ \text{singa6óni} \sim \text{singa6ónè} \quad \text{singa6ílmé} \]

The use of FTM's \{\text{HH}{\text{I}}\} and \{\text{LH}{\text{I}}\} (a form) is alternative to the use of FTM's \{\text{HL}{\text{I}}\} and \{\text{LL}{\text{I}}\} (a form) or FTM \{\text{HL}{\text{I}}\} throughout (b form). The (c) form is less common.

Note: Only verbs with disyllabic stems show the \{\text{HH}{\text{I}};\text{LL}{\text{I}}\} FTM contrast. Polyssyllabic stem verbs use FTM \{\text{HH}{\text{I}}\} throughout.

\[ \text{HL} \quad \text{contrasting with} \quad \text{LH} \]

II: imperative singular without object concord:

\[ \text{6óni} \quad \text{(see)} \quad \text{limá} \quad \text{(plow)} \]
\[ \text{báí} \quad \text{(write)} \quad \text{válá} \quad \text{(shut)} \]

Only verbs with disyllabic stems show this contrast; polysyllabic stem verbs use FTM \{\text{HL}{\text{I}}\} throughout.

\[ \text{HH} \quad \text{contrasting with} \quad \text{LL} \]

III 2b: indicative present imperfect, dependent positive:

\[ \text{sí6óni} \sim \text{sí6ónè} \quad \text{síliúm sé} \]
\[ \text{síyi'6ólé} \sim \text{síyi'6ónè}^+ \quad (+ \text{obj. } \text{síyi'6úmè}^* \quad (+ \text{obj. conc.}) \quad \text{conci}) \]
\[ \text{sí6óníá} \sim \text{sí6óníá}^+ \quad \text{síliúm sé} \]

Note effect of subject concord. The use of FTM \{\text{HH}{\text{I}}\} (b form) by verbs of tone class I is alternative to the use of the FTM \{\text{HL}{\text{I}}\} (a form). The former is the standard form, but the latter is widely used with polysyllabic stem verbs.
imperative singular without object concord:

6b1nîšâ (make see) 1lîmîšâ (make plow)
6hîlêkâ (run away) 6gîjîmâ (run)

Only verbs with polysyllabic stems show no contrast; disyllabic stem verbs use the \{HL:LL\} FTM contrast.

imperative plural:

6bînî (see ye) 1lîmî (plow ye)
yîbînî (+ obj. conc.) yîlîfîmî (+ obj. conc.)
yîbâlînî (write it) yîvâlînî (shut it)
6hâlînî (run away) 6gîjînî (run)

Note the contrast on object concord.

indicative past tense, indep./dep. negative:

asî6b1nângâ (indep.) asîlîfîmângâ (indep.)
hasîsîlî6b1nângâ (+ obj. conc.) hasîsîlîfîmângâ (+ obj. conc.)
hasîsîlîhâlîngâ (write) hasîsîlîvâlîngâ (shut)
sîngâsîlîmângâ (dep.) sîngâsîlîfîmângâ (dep.)

Note the contrast on subject concord without object concord and on nondepressor antepenultimate syllables in independent tense.

indicative present imperfect, independent negative:

asî6înî (we) asîlîfînî (we)
asîyîfî6înî (+ obj. conc.) asîyîfîlîmî (+ obj. conc.)
hasî6înî (they) hasîlîfînî (they)
asîyî6îlînî (+ obj. conc.) asîyîlîfînî (+ obj. conc.)

Note the contrast on subject concord without object concord.

subjunctive past tense, positive and negative:

shâ6ônî, shôtînî (pos.) shîmî, shîlîmî (pos.)
sângâ6ônî, sângâ6bnîšâ (neg.) sângâlîfînî, sângâlîfîmî (neg.)

Note the contrast on nondepressor antepenultimate syllables of verbs with polysyllabic stems. With tone class II verbs, FTM \{HL\} (b form) is alternative to FTM \{LL\} (a form).

1 The object concord displaces its high toneme.
potential present tense, positive and negative:
singlyana, singlyā'nisā (pos.) singlyānisa
singlyāna, singlyā'nisā (neg.) singlyānise, singlyā'nisē (neg.)
singlya'nisā (cause to write) singlyānise (cause to wash)

Note the contrast on nondepressor antepenultimate syllables of verbs with polysyllabic stems. With tone class II verbs, FTM [HL] (b form) is alternative to FTM [LL] (a form).

III 2a: indicative present perfect, dependent positive:
singlynile ~ singlynilē + sillī-nilē ~ sillī-nilē +
silyī-nilē (+ obj. conc.) silyī-nilē (+ obj. conc.)
silyī-nilē ~ silyī-nilē + silyī-nilē ~ silyī-nilē +

Note the contrast on subject concord without object concord. Polysyllabic stem verbs use FTM [HL] throughout wherever disyllabic stem verbs show the [LH] FTM contrast.

e.g. I: Negative infinitive:

ukungābonīyi ~ ukungābonīyi
ukungāyī'nisā ~ ukungāyī-nilē +

The final form is shown with object concord.

e.g. III 2: independent/dependent positive past indicative:
sā'li-nilē ~ sā'li-nilē ~ sā'li-nilē ~
sā'li-nilē + sā'li-nilē +

The final form is shown with object concord.

e.g. IV 2: positive present subjunctive with object concord:
sā'li-nilē ~ sā'li-nilē + sā'li-nilē ~ sā'li-nilē +

Note the contrast on nondepressor antepenultimate syllables.

This contrast is eliminated subsequent to the positive tense sign /nag/, because of tonal displacement.
IV 2: subjunctive present tense positive without object concord:

- **si₁o₆nₑ**
- **si₁₁₀nₑ**
- **si₁₁₀nₑ**
- **si₁₁₀nₑ**
- **si₁₁₀nₑ** (shut)
- **si₁₁₀nₑ** (shut for)

Note the contrast on subject concord, with disyllabic stem verbs only. Only verbs without object concord use FTM \( \{LH\} \) throughout; verbs with object concord use either FTM \( \{LL\} \) throughout (polysyllabic stems) or the FTM contrast (disyllabic stems), which disyllabic stem verbs with nondepressor penultimate syllables without object concord also sometimes use, e.g. \( /si₁₁₀nₑ~(si₁₁₀nₑ~si₁₁₀nₑ)/ \).

III 2a: indicative present perfect, independent positive:

- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (bring for one another)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (choose for one another)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (they)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (run away)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (they)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (run)

Note the contrast on third person subject concord or on antepenultimate syllables (1st and 2nd persons). Only verbs with polysyllabic stems use FTM \( \{LL\} \) throughout; disyllabic stem verbs use the FTM contrast, which polysyllabic stem verbs also sometimes use, e.g. \( /si₁₁₁₀nₑ~si₁₁₁₀nₑ~/ \), but this is rare.

III 2a: indicative present perfect, indep./dep. positive, nonfinal form:

- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (indep.)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (indep.)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (they, indep.)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (they indep.)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (dep.)
- **si₁₁₁₀nₑ** (dep.)

Note the contrast on third person subject concord in indep. tense and on subject concord without object concord in dep. tense. Note contraction of FTM \( \{LL\} \).
III 2a: indicative present perfect, indep./dep. negative:

- əsi6bnilé+ (indep.) əsi6bnilé+ (indep.)
- əsiyf6bnilé+ (+ obj. conc.) əsiyf6bnilé+ (+ obj. conc.)
- ə6ngəhambilé+ (they are not gone, dep.) ə6ngəhambilé+ (they are not come, dep.)

Note the contrast on subject concord without object concord. This tense has no nonfinal form: it cannot occur without penultimate length.

Note:

(a) This table shows the significant contrasts relating to FTM substitutions in verbal conjugation to be [HL:LL] and [HH:LI]. There is a great amount of allomorphic overlapping, particularly between [HL] and the HL allomorph of [LL] and between [II] and the LH allomorph of [HH], which obscures these contrasts and so renders them inclined to redundancy. The [HH:LI] contrast is already redundant with polysyllabic stem verbs, and there is a tendency for disyllabic stem verbs with nondepressor penultimate syllables to follow this example: to treat the LH allomorph of the [LL] FTM of tone class II as the LH allomorph of the [HH] FTM of tone class I, and so to substitute the HL+ allomorph in positions of penultimate length. On the other hand the [HL:LL] contrast is often obliterated by morphotonemic change with disyllabic stem verbs, and there is a tendency for polysyllabic stem verbs to use the [HL] FTM throughout, on false analogy. They already do so in the past subjunctive and present potential (b) forms, so that for speakers who consistently use these forms, the [HL:LL] contrast is already redundant here. Similarly in the past and present indicative negative tenses, the use of the [HL] FTM throughout probably replaces the use of the [HL:LL] contrast. Thus there is a drift towards the incorporation of tone class II into tone class I by the elimination of the class II FTM's, [LL] and [LH].

On the other hand the positive present subjunctive without object concord uses FTM [LH] throughout instead of the [HH:LI]

At present this form is to be regarded as a mistake.
contrast, and the indep. pos. present perfect indicative uses FTM [LL] throughout with polysyllabic stem verbs, instead of the [HL:LL] contrast. Similarly the occasional occurrence of FTM [LL] with polysyllabic stem verbs of tone class I in the indep. pos. present imperfect indicative and in the positive infinitive, particularly with stems of more than three syllables, e.g. /dikhôln'ilsâ <= dikhôln'ilsâ/ (to see thoroughly), points to the end of the drift as a single tonal conjugation. At present, however, where there is no FTM contrast, there is often a partly effective contrast in ITM, e.g. subject concord without object concord, or in FTM, e.g. nondepressor antepenultimate syllables, to distinguish the two tonal conjugations.

Where there are FTM contrasts, the FTM's are both lexically and grammatically significant, but where there are not, the FTM's function grammatically only. Thus with disyllabic stem verbs the FTM's [HH] and [LL] function grammatically to indicate certain tenses and lexically to distinguish the two tone classes, e.g. /sâ:sindî+// (we escaped) and /sâ:šindî+// (we smeared), but with polysyllabic stem verbs the FTM [HH] functions grammatically only, e.g. /sâ:yisindî+/ (he helped him to escape/to smear).

Although it is not possible to attribute grammatical meaning to particular tonal morphemes, it is noteworthy that the FTM's of the [HL:LL] contrast characterize the independent positive present tense of the indicative mood and the positive infinitive, and that the FTM's of the [HH:LL] contrast characterize the dependent negative present tense (except perfect and future aspects) of the indicative mood ¹ and the negative infinitive.

The dependent positive present tense (except future aspect) of the indicative mood is indicated by the [HH] FTM alone ¹, but lexical tonal ambiguity is prevented by an ITM contrast, e.g. /sîlsindîel+/ (we having escaped) and /sîlsindîel+/ (we having smeared). The independent negative present tense (except future aspect) of the indicative mood is indicated by the [HH] FTM alone, but lexical tonal ambiguity is prevented by an ITM contrast, e.g. /halsîndî/ (we do not escape) and /hâl'sîndî/ (we do not smear). Grammatical tonal ambiguity is sometimes prevented by an ITM contrast.

¹ Also the negative present subjunctive and potential tenses, which are dependent in form but not necessarily in function.

² Except that verbs of tone class II use the [LL] FTM in the imperfect aspect.
139

e.g. /słyllirna/ (we plow it, indep. pos. present tense) and /słyllirp/ (we plow it, dep. pos. present tense), and sometimes by an FTM contrast,
e.g. /sllllms/ (we help to plow, indep. pos. present tense) and /slllms/ (we help to plow, dep. pos. present tense).

(b) Disyllabic stem and polysyllabic stem verbs do not differ whether the stems are nonderivative,
e.g. tone class I: /sona/ (see), /sala/ (write), /saleka/ (run away),
tone class II: /sima/ (plow), /sala/ (shut), /sijima/ (run),
or whether the stems are derivative,
e.g. tone class I: /sela/ (die for )/<sala/, /sliwa/ (be eaten)<sala/,
/saleka/ (be audible)<zwala/, /snonisa/ (help or cause to see),
tone class II: /sela/ (fall into)<ma/, /snuza/ (be done)
<ena/, /simisa/ (help or cause to plow),
/sijimela/ (run towards).

(c) Monosyllabic stem verbs accommodate the bitonal FTM's of verbal conjugation only partially, and the final two tonemes constitute a pseudo-FTM of which only the final toneme is an FTM toneme,
e.g. tone class I with FTM [HL]: /slyal/ (to die),
/salayla/, /salayla/ (we/they are dying)\(^i\).
tone class II with FTM [HL]: /salyala/ (to fall),
/salyala/, /salyala/ (we/they are falling)\(^ii\).

However, these verbs can accommodate the FTM's completely, where there is an object infix which now bears the first FTM toneme,
e.g. /slyalidibl+/ (we eat it), /saliyidil+/ (we do not eat it); where there is an inherent toneme infix which now bears the first FTM toneme in addition to its inherent toneme,
e.g. /sbyanahfi/ (not to die), LH allomorph of FTM [HH],
/sbyanahfi/ (not to fall), LH allomorph of FTM [HL];
where there is a disyllabic suffix,
e.g. /sfillb+/, /sfillb+/ (we/they are dead),
/sfllib+/+, /sfillb+/ (we/they are fallen).

Nevertheless, there are certain exceptions in the conjugation of monosyllabic stem verbs, which are left to Chapter 7. \(^i\)

\(^i\) Other verbs of tone class I: /sala/ (eat), /zwala/ (hear), /sala/ (stand, stop).

\(^ii\) Other verbs of tone class II: /shja/ (burn), /sala/ (ruin), /yu/ (go), /sala/ (come).
Disyllabic initial vowel stem verbs behave as monosyllabic stem verbs,
e.g. /skwkhˊá/ (to build, tone class I).
/bkwˇbnˊá/ (to do/act/make, tone class II).

5.3.2. Grammatical agreement

The agreement of gender-number-person prefixes is not paralleled by agreement as to the tonal morphemes they bear. In the three aspects of the independent positive present tense of the indicative mood, 3rd person prefixes generally bear high tonemes where 1st and 2nd person prefixes bear low tonemes, e.g. /uy66n ˊa/ (he sees), /uy66n ˋa/ (you see), but this distinction is not maintained even in the nonfinal forms, e.g. /b66n ˋa/ (he seen), /b66n ˋa/ (you see). In the dependent positive present tense, in the indicative negative tenses, and in all tenses of the subjunctive and potential moods, there is no such distinction, and with nominal prefixes there is no such distinction except with conjunctive pronouns, e.g. /nboh ˋa/ (with him), /nhv ˊa/ (with you).

5.3.3. Inflection

5.3.3.1. Nominal inflection

The tonemes used on suffixal inflection are determined by the FTM's of nominal tonal declension (see 5.3.1.1.iii). The tonemes used on prefixal inflection by the first or inner layer of gender-number-person prefixes are determined by the ITM's, which are generally conditioned by the FTM's of the simple stems according to tonal dissimilation. The tonemes used on prefixal inflection by the outer or extra layer of case prefixes are determined by the extra ITM's, which are generally independent of the FTM's and the ITM's. Tonemes not determined by ITM's and FTM's are determined by the M'TM's A and B described above (5.3.0.3.), the former (L', all low tones) being used with FTM [H], and the latter (H ~ L'H, an antepenultimate high toneme) being used with FTM [L'H].

5.3.3.1.1. Nouns

(a) Full form nouns

The ITM's are [LH] where the first tone of the simple stem FTM is L, [HL] where it is H, and [L'H] with nouns of tone.

---

1 Some speakers maintain that it is possible in cases of ambiguity to distinguish between /b66n ˋa/ (you see) and /m66n ˋa/ (he sees), but covert tonal upsteps do not normally mark FTM's.
class I. The allomorphs of these tonal morphemes are as follows:

ITM $\overset{L}{H}$ of tone class I:

$L^+H$ (normal allomorph),

e.g. /isihlahlah/ (bush)
    /isihlahlahu/ (small bush)
    /isihlahlahuyah/ (very small bush)

$L^+L$ (tonal displacement),

e.g. /isihlahlah+ ~ isihlahlah/ (bushes)

cf. /izinha/ (affairs)

$H$ (monosyllabic prefix),

e.g. /inthmbb/ (string)

$L$ (tonal displacement),

e.g. /ngentambah+/ (by means of string)

$LH$ ~ $H$ (long vowel prefix),

e.g. /iyi:ka ~ iyika/ (hoe)

$LH$ ~ $H$ (i. inizi),

e.g. /i:mbabo (~ imba)/ (axes)

$L$ (tonal displacement),

e.g. /i:nyoni/ (birds)

On suffixal extension the monosyllabic and long vowel allomorphs are replaced by $L^+H$,

e.g. /intanjana/ (short string)
    /lsikhathi ~ lsikhathi/ (locative)
    /lsikhathayah ~ lysikhathayah/ (diminutive).

ITM $H^+L$ of tone class II:

$LH$ (normal allomorph),

e.g. /isikhathi/ (time)
    /isikhathana/ (short time).

$LL$ (tonal displacement),

e.g. /isikhathi+ ~ isikhathi/ (plural)
    /isikhathayah/ (diminutive)

$H$ (monosyllabic prefix),

e.g. /inthmbh/ (girl)

$L$ (tonal displacement),

e.g. /nhentombi+/ (with a girl)
A final high toneme requires a penultimate low toneme for its realization, and a toneme cluster requires vowel length (either inherent or imposed) for its realization.
On suffixal extension the monosyllabic and long vowel allomorphs are retained,

\[ /\text{in'sizwana} \sim /\text{insizwha} / (\text{small young man}) \]
\[ /\text{enInzwenæ} \sim /\text{enInzwenæ} / (\text{locative}) \]
\[ /\text{in'iʃła} > /\text{in'ʃiya} / (\text{double diminutive}). \]

There is no tonal ambiguity between nouns of tone classes II and III on suffixal extension because of the contrast between the [TMYH] and [HL],

\[ \text{III}: /\text{amâkhehilâ} > /\text{amâkhehilâ} / (chiefs), \]
\[ \text{II}: /\text{amâkhosâ} > /\text{amâkhosâ} / (elders). \]

Although the distinction is slight with nondepressors\(^1\), it is not slight with depressors where there is no tonal assimilation,

\[ \text{III}: /\text{izlwła} > /\text{izlwla} / (\text{in the rains}), \]
\[ \text{II}: /\text{izIndongâ} > /\text{izIndongâ} / (\text{on the walls}); \]
\[ \text{III}: /\text{izlkâ} > /\text{izlkâ} > /\text{izlkâ} / (\text{cattle}); \]
\[ \text{II}: /\text{izlkâmb} > /\text{izlkâmb} / (\text{cattle}). \]

Depressors cause tonal displacement; this process is blocked in /izIndongâ/ but not in /izlkâmb \sim /izlkâmb+/. \]

There is no tonal ambiguity between nouns of tone classes I and IV on suffixal extension because of the contrast between the IWM's [LH] and [HL],

\[ \text{IV}: /\text{izlnswa} / (\text{young men}) > /\text{izlnswa} / (\text{young men}); \]
\[ \text{I}: /\text{amâdödâ} / (\text{men}) > /\text{amâdödâ} / (\text{men}); \]

Tonal ambiguity sometimes arises in quick speech because of the substitution of low tonemes for initial high tonemes followed by a tonal upstep,

\[ /\text{abâ'fanyâ} / (\text{boys}) > /\text{abâ'fanyâ} \sim /\text{abâ'fanyâ} /; \]
\[ /\text{amâdödödö} / (\text{men}) > /\text{amâdödödö} /; \]

Tonal ambiguity arises between nouns of tone classes III and IV on double suffixal extension,

\[ /\text{izlnswa} / (\text{young men}), \]
\[ /\text{amâkhehilâ} / (\text{locative diminutive}); \]
\[ /\text{izlnswa} / (\text{young men}); \]
\[ /\text{izlwla} / (\text{rains}); \]

\(^1\) In quick speech it is nonexistent: /amâkhehilâ, amâkhehilâ/.
but not between nouns of tone classes I and II because of the distinctiveness of ITM $L^H$ of tone class I,

**e.g.** I. /lizindle6a/ (affairs) > /ezindle6a/neni/,
   II. /lizindle6e/ (ears) > /ezindle6a/neni/,
   III. /lizimpapha/ (feathers) > /ezimpapha/neni/,
   IV. /lizinowadi/ (letters) > /ezinowadi/neni/.

With monosyllabic and long vowel prefixes the possibility of tonal ambiguity on suffixal extension is far greater, because all ITM's use the $H$ allomorph. The ITM of tone class I is still distinct, however, in that $H$ is replaced by $L^H$ in extensions,

**e.g.** I. /inyonl!/ (bird) > /inyonyhna/ > enyonyaneni/,
   II. /enqhi6a6h/ (in a small wagon),
   III. /enqdbsb6h/ (to a minor chief),
   IV. /enqbuyaneni/ (on a little beast).

The extra ITM for full form nouns is $H^H$, except where the extra prefix coincides with the initial vowel of the noun in which case it adopts its toneme,

**e.g.** /indb6h/ (man) > /yhindb6h/ (by a man)
   > /nh6"yhi n6b6h/ (and by a man)
   > /nj6"ng6nb6h/ (like a man)
   /lizimb6h/ (axes) > /ng6simb6h/ (by means of axes)
   > /nh6ng6simb6h/ (and by means of axes)
   /h66ntw6nh/ (children) > /h66ntw6nh/ (to the children)
   /tzink66b/ (cattle) > /tzink66b/ (amongst the cattle)
   /in6mb6h/ (girl) > /66h6b 66ntw6kh/ (the girl's face)
   /yil6/ (his father) > /h66nta y6"k6il6/ (his father's people)
   /tzindlh/ (nats) > /ng6sindlh/ (by means of nats)
   /izinja/ (dogs) > /ng6zinija/ (by means of dogs)
   /in6r6/ (dog) > /yhin6r6/ (by a dog)

Most extra prefixes have depressors causing tonal displacement,

**e.g.** /int6iz6h/ (young man) > /yhin6siz6h/ (by the young man),
   cf. /izlnsizela/ (young men) > /yhin6siz6h/ (by the young men);
**e.g.** /int6ambah/ (girl) > /i6zindla zent6mb6h/ (the girl's hands),
   cf. /in6gb6h/ (child) > /i6zindla z6ng66h/ (the child's hands);
**e.g.** /in6k6f/ (chief) > /nj6ng6nk6f/ (like a chief),
   /inowah/ (letter) > /nh6n6ncwah/ (and by letter),
   /sim6th/ (trees) > /in6p6nd6"y6n6th/ (tree root),
   /im6th/ (trees) > /izimpah6 z6mith/ (tree roots),
   /tzink66m6n6/ (to the cattle) > /ng6s6zink66m6n6/ (towards the cattle).
In the Zululand dialect the conjunctive prefix is sometimes /na/ instead of /nha/, particularly with the old folk,

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{nén'siwa}/ \text{ instead of } /\text{nḥənsiwa}/ \text{ (with a young man)},
\]
\[/\text{nentshə}/ \text{ instead of } /\text{nḥəntəshə}/ \text{ (with a girl)},
\]
\[/\text{nəndbə}/ \text{ instead of } /\text{nḥəndbə}/ \text{ (with a man)}.\]

The extra ITM is not capable of expansion, with the result that on multiple inflection a sequence of tonal upsteps arises,

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{nḥə'n̩'hin'ndən̩/ (and by an induna),}
\]
\[/\text{nḥə'n̩'njə'ngən'ndən̩/ (even as an induna).}\]

Morphotonic change tends to substitute a low tone for an initial high tone followed by a tonal upstep,

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{nḥə'n̩'hin'ndən̩/}, /\text{nḥə'n̩'njə'ngən'ndən̩/}.\]

(b) Short form nouns

The ITM is \(\text{ʃl̩/} \text{ throughout, and } \text{ʃl̩+}/ \text{ with nouns of tone class I.}\)

I. \(/\text{zikhl̩ła}/ \text{ (bush), } /\text{zikhl̩la}/ \text{ (plural), cf. } /\text{zikhl̩la+}/;\)
\[> /\text{zikhl̩ła}/ \text{ (diminutive), cf. } /\text{zikhl̩ła}/.\]

II. \(/\text{zikhl̩tha}/ \text{ (time), } /\text{zikkhəthə}/ \text{ (plural), cf. } /\text{zikkhəthə+}/;\)
\[> /\text{zikkhəthə}/ \text{ (diminutive), cf. } /\text{zikkhəthə}/.\]

III. \(/\text{zikkhəhən̩} \sim /\text{zikkhəhən̩}/, cf. /\text{zikkhəhən̩}/ \sim /\text{zikkhəhən̩}/ (bag)\)

II. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (girl), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (girls), cf. } /\text{zikkhən̩}/.\)

II. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (elder), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (elders).}\)

IV. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (young man), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (young men).}\)

IV. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (warrior), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (warriors).}\)

IV. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (dog), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (dogs).}\)

IV. \(/\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (word), } /\text{zikkhən̩}/ \text{ (words).}\)

Note the zero prefix forms, e.g. /ntshəbi, n̩sizwa, n̩jə/. The forms /n̩jə, m̩zwi/ have no primary stress and therefore no status as words,

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{m̩zwi}/ \text{ (I hear no word, Zululand dialect),}\]
\[/\text{m̩zwi}/ \text{ (I hear no word, Natal dialect).}\]

After demonstratives only the monosyllabic forms are used,

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{n̩jə}/ \text{ (this dog), } /\text{n̩jə}/ \text{ (that dog).}\]
and as vocatives only the disyllabic forms are used, e.g. /mjä// (dog!).

Tonal ambiguity arises on suffixal extension between nouns of tone classes II and III, e.g. III. /məkhbasə /, məkhbasanyə / < məkhbasə ~ məkhbaə/ (chiefs), II. /məkhbaslə /, məkhbaslanyə / < məkhbasə/ (elders), but not between nouns of tone classes I and IV, because the latter employs MTM B (antepenultimate high tone) conditioned by FTM /LL/, whereas the former employs no MTM because of expandable ITM /L/, e.g. IV. /Gəfənyə/, Gəfənyənyə < Gəfənə/ (boys), I. /səhəhənə /, səhəhənyə < səhəhə/ (bush), cf. /səhəhənə /, səhəhənyənyə < səhəhə/,

the full form noun with expandable ITM /L/. The distinctiveness of the ITM of tone class I is to be correlated with the distinctiveness of the FTM as the only final tonal morpheme without a high tone constituent.

The extra ITM for short form nouns is /L/ for the first inflection and /H/ for subsequent inflections, e.g. /zəmbəθə / (axes) > /nəzənlənəθə zəniθ/ (with what sort of axes?), > /nəhənlənəθə zəniθ/ (and with what sort of axes?); /mnθələ/ (person) > /nənjənənθə zəniθ/ (like what sort of person?), /zənkəθə / (cattle) > /nəzənəkəθə zəfiθ/ (amongst which cattle?)⁰¹, cf. /sənəkəθənənə zəfiθ/ (amongst the cattle of our place); e.g. /nənθənə/ (girl) > /nəzənəθə nənθənθəθ/ (we hear through no girl), cf. /nənθənə ngənθənθəθ/ (we do not hear through the girl); e.g. /nənθənə/ (child) > /nəzənənθənθəθ/ (we have no child), cf. /nəzənənθənθəθ/ (we have a child); e.g. /məksəθə / (chief) > /nəzənə sənkəθə zənθəθəθ/ (tribes of a single chief)⁰².

⁰¹ The irregular adjective /phi/ normally precedes the noun which is then in apposition, e.g. /kəzəphi/ lezənkəθəθ/. The irregular adjective /nθ/ never precedes the noun. Note the final tonal assimilation from high to low: /zənkəθəθ > zənkəθəθ/.

²² The irregular adjective /nyθ/ is rarely used except in copula verb construction, e.g. /nθəniθəθ zənθəθəθ/ (a single chief). Note the final tonal assimilation from high to low: /nθəθəθ > nθəθəθ/.
5.3.3.1.2. Adjectives

(a) Old or true adjectives

With true adjectives, of which there are less than twenty altogether, the ITM of the dependent prefix is \( L_1 \),

\[ \text{e.g. IV} /\text{glhám}/ (five), /\text{slncán}/ (small) /\text{шла}/ (old) > /\text{шла}nhá}/ (oldish) /\text{шла}/ (good), /\text{шат}/ (bad), /\text{шах}/ (new) /\text{слф}/ (which?), /\text{шл}/ (what sort?) \]

\[ \text{III} /\text{шла}l/ (three), /\text{шлфшл}/ (short) /\text{шльшл}/ (big) > /\text{шльшл}/ (bigger) \]

\[ \text{II} /\text{шлн}/ (two) /\text{шлн}/ (four), /\text{шлн}/ (long), /\text{шлн}/ (one) \]

Adjectives have no independent function. They function only in nomino-verbal constructions (q.v.) with or without the copula verb. With the copula verb the ITM is \( L_1 \),

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{шлн} - /\text{шлн}/ (they become big, great) /\text{шлн} - /\text{шлн}/ (we will be(two, five) /\text{шлн} - /\text{шлн}/ (that they should be one). \]

Without the copula verb the ITM is \( L_1 \) except in the independent positive present tense for the third person where no verbal prefix is used, when the ITM is \( H_1 \). The prefix high toneme is displaced to the following syllable unless tonal displacement is blocked by a depressor, regardless of whether the prefix contains a depressor, in the Natal dialect but not in the Zululand dialect,

\[ \text{e.g.} /\text{шлн}l/ ~ /\text{шлн}l/ (they are big, great) /\text{шлн}l/ ~ /\text{шлн}l/ (they are two, nominal class 2) /\text{шлн}l/ (they are two, nominal class 10) /\text{шлн}/ (they are old), cf. /\text{шлн}/ (we are old) /\text{шлн}l/ ~ /\text{шлн}/ (they are good), cf. /\text{шлн}/ (we are good) /\text{шлн}/ (he is one), cf. /\text{шлн}/ (I am one). \]

cf. \( /\text{шлн}l/ ~ /\text{шлн}/ ~ /\text{шлн}/ ~ /\text{шлн}/ (they are not big) /\text{шлн}/ (they are not old). \]

The addition of the relative vowel converts the adjective from predicative function to qualificative function or to substantive function

\[ ^1 \text{Such tonal displacement also occurs with imperative verbs, e.g.} /\text{шлн}/ (plow it), cf. /\text{шлн}/ (shut it), but not in the Zululand dialect. \]
(self-standing adjectives),

e.g. 
\[
/ąćą'/khulh+/ (who are big), /ąćą'/adder+/ (which are big) \\
/ąćą'/dáɓ/ (who are old), /ąćą'/adder+/ (which are old) \\
/ąćą'/shaɓ/ (who are young), /ąćą'/adder+/ (which are new) \\
/ąćą'/dáɓ/ (who are tall), /ąćą'/adder+/ (which are long)
\]

Adjectives are not directly inflectional by nominal extra prefix, except the irregular adjectives, /phi/ (which), /ni/ (what sort?), /nye/ (only one), which function without the relative vowel, when the extra ITM is [HI],

e.g. 
\[
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/bámnth+/ (dog of which person?) \\
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/bámnth+/ (dogs of which person?) \\
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/bámnth+/ (by which way?)
\]

e.g. 
\[
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/ (agentive or predicative), \\
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/ (qualitative), /nqą'/adder+/ (short form noun)
\]

e.g. 
\[
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/ (by/it is which ones?), \\
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/ (by/it is dogs)
\]

The adjective /phi/ rarely follows the noun. The adjective /nye/ normally follows the noun, most often in copula verb construction,

e.g. 
\[
/ɪnų'/yqą'/adder+/ (where are they?)
\]

The commonest expression of "only one" is by means of the exclusive pronoun, e.g. /t'llhshàl ści'l'dwà/ (a horse which is only one).
e.g. /yhin/ (what is it?)
   /ngani/ (by means of what? how? why?)
   /ngamanc wani+/ (What sort of person is he?)
   /akamanc wali+th/ (He is a person of no worth).

This is the only example in Zulu of the use of extra prefixes with
gender nominals without gender prefixes. The use of extra prefixes
with genderless nominals is common,
e.g. /ophi+ ala:/ (Where is he? He is here).

(b) New or noun adjectives

With noun adjectives, of which there are more than fifty al-
together, the ITM of the independent prefix is [H].

   e.g. IV /anyama/ (black) < /atanyama/ (darkness)
         /akhali/ (sharp) < /atkhali/ (sharpness)
   III /hloph+/ (white) < /atph+/ (white beast)
       /anzaka/ (brown) < /atzaka/ (brown beast)
       /nlang+/ (painful) < /atlang+/ (pain)
       /akhali+/ (hard) < /atkhali+/ (firewood)
   II /sank/ (wide) < ?
      /omw/ (red) < /ophi/ (red ochre)
   I /nymba/ (strong, heavy) < /inzma/ (black bull)
      /amhantu/ (blunt) < /atzantu/ (brightness)

Adjectives have no independent function. They function only
in nomine-verbal constructions (q.v.), either with the copula verb,
e.g. /shazi - khali, - nthu/ (let them be sharp, blunt),
or without the copula verb, when the prefix low tone is subject
to tonal assimilation to or tonal displacement from the verbal
prefix,
e.g. /atkhali/ (it is sharp - tonal assimilation)
       /atzkhali/ (they are sharp - tonal displacement)
       /atkhali/ (they are not sharp).

The addition of the relative vowel converts the adjective from
predicative function to qualificative function or to substantive

1 /lthb ~ lth/, a short form noun used almost exclusively after
a negative predicate to mean "nothing".

ii These stems have zero prefixes.
function (self-standing adjectives),
e.g. /esl6a'khali/ (which are sharp)
/esl6amv/ (red one)
/esl6amv/ (red ones).

Noun adjectives derive from short form nouns, but they constitute a separate part of speech in that -

a) the derivation is sometimes uncertain, e.g. /naǐm/, and sometimes nonexistent, e.g. /kunzi/.

b) short form nouns in positive nomino-verbal constructions require qualification, e.g. /b'mnhō "a'mmv/ (he is red-eyed),
/b'mdhw b'mlmmm a'mth'lh/ (a three-legged cooking pot),
whereas noun adjectives do not, e.g. /kunz/m/ (it is heavy, difficult),
/kunz'm/ (it is hard, difficult).

c) short form nouns function in various ways and are inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, whereas noun adjectives function only in nomino-verbal constructions and are not directly inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes.

5.3.1.3. Pronouns

The ITM's are [I] and [H] according to tonal dissimilation from the root tone with absolute, inclusive and exclusive pronouns, e.g. /b'nh/ (they), /b'nh/ (all they), /b'nh/ (only they), and from the adjective prefix high tone with numeral pronouns, whose stems are predicative adjectives, e.g. /b'nh// (both of them), /b'nl'h/ (all five of them, with class 2 reference);
/b'nh/ (both), /b'nhh/ (all five, with class 10 reference). Only the absolute pronoun is inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, and the others may only follow in apposition, e.g. /nənh z'nh/ (through all of them), /nənh w'nh b'nl'h/ (in all the world).

The extra ITM is [H] with all extra prefixes except [nha] and [kunha], where it is [H] with 1st and 2nd person pronouns which use the general low tone allomorph and [I] with 3rd person pronouns which use the special high tone allomorph, in the first inflectional position only,
e.g. /nhanh/ (with me), /kanhnh/ (rather than me),
/nhany/ (with him), /kanhnhny/ (rather than him),
/nhanhngay/ (and through him);

and except in negative copulative constructions where it is /nh/ with all extra prefixes together with the special high tone.

The inflectional allomorphs of the absolute pronoun are as follows:

\[
\begin{array}{c|c|c|c|c|c|c}
\text{míná} & \text{1st. p. sg.} & \text{Cl.1.} & ní & níná & (mí) & (mí) & mí \\
\text{thíná} & \text{1st. p. pl.} & \text{Cl.2.} & thí & thíná & (thí) & (thí) & thí \\
\text{wéná} & \text{2nd. p. sg.} & \text{Cl.1.} & wí & wéná & (wí) & kíwí & wí \\
\text{níná} & \text{2nd. p. pl.} & \text{Cl.2.} & ní & níná & (ní) & (ní) & ní \\
\text{yéná} & \text{3rd. p. sg.} & \text{Cl.1.} & yê & yéná & yê & kíwí & yê \\
\text{bóná} & \text{3rd. p. pl.} & \text{Cl.2.} & bõ & bóná & bõ & (bõ) & bõ \\
\text{wéná} & \text{3rd. p. pl.} & \text{Cl.6.} & wóná & wéná & wõ & (wõ) & wõ \\
\text{zóna} & \text{3rd. p. pl.} & \text{Cl.10.} & zõ & zóna & zõ & (zõ) & zõ \\
\end{array}
\]

Notes:

(a) The general inflectional allomorph used with /yhi/, /ngá/, /kú/, and the comparative prefixes,
\[\text{e.g. } /yhi/ \text{ (by me), } /ngá/ \text{ (through me), } /kú/ \text{ (to me); } /ngá/ \text{ (by him), } /ngá/ \text{ (through him), } /kú/ \text{ (to him); } /nje/ \text{ (like us); } /nha/ \text{ (and by means of them); } /nhangah/ \text{ (and in the direction of their place).}\]

(b) The full form allomorph used as an alternative to the general allomorph with /yhi/ and /kú/ only,
\[\text{e.g. } /yhmá/ \sim /yhmá/ \sim /yhmá/ \text{ (it is me); } /ngayá/ \sim /ngayá/ \sim /ngayá/ \text{ (it is him); } /yhsbá/ \sim /yhsbá/ \text{ (it is them); } /kóhá/ \sim /kóhá/ \text{ (to them, at their place), } /kítá/ \sim /kítá/ \text{ (to us, at our place).}\]

(c) The special allomorph used with /nha/ and /kunha/ bearing /L/, except the bracketed general allomorph used with /nha/ and /kunha/ bearing /H/.
\[\text{e.g. } /nhyá/ \text{ (with him), } /nhayá, nhaz/ \text{ (with them), } /nhá/ \text{ (with me), } /nhatá/ \text{ (with us); } /kánhayá/ \text{ (rather than them), } /káhnhatá/ \text{ (rather than us).}\]

\[\text{1 The final two tonemes constitute a pseudo-FTM as the tonal downstep shows.}\]
(d) The special possessive pronoun allomorph used with the possessive prefixes and the locative possessive prefix /kwa/. There are only four such forms in fact, two of which have latent "i" causing /a > e/, and the rest (in brackets) represent the general allomorph,
e.g. /indlĩ yemá/ (my house), /indlĩ yáthá/ (our house).
There are indications that in some dialects some of these stems condition the extra ITM /H/, but the standard dialect uses the extra ITM /H/ throughout,
e.g. /isigqókó sákãhá/ (his/her hat)
   /isigqókó zábóhá/ (their hats, class 2 reference)
   /isigqókó zázóhá/ (their hats, class 10 reference)
   /phãmbó kwákãhá/ (in front of him)
   /phóchó kwóthóhá/ (above us).
Possessives take precedence in word order over all qualifiers, and in this position (without penultimate length) the high tone of the possessive pronoun is sometimes flattened,
e.g. /isítohá shãm ási'káhãhá+/ (my big plate),
   cf. /isítohá sãmá+/ (my plate).

(e) These allomorphs are used in negative copulative constructions together with the extra ITM /I/,
e.g. /aslyh₁₁₁/ (we are not they), cf. /slyh₁₁/ (positive),
   /áh₁₁₁háth₁₁/ (they are not with us), cf. /áh₁₁₁háth₁₁/ (positive).
(See 5.3.5. Nomino-verbal constructions).

5.3.3.1.4. Demonstratives

Demonstratives are exceptional in that the agreement element is not a prefix and the stem occurs initially. The stem is related to the adverb /i/ (here), and it is prefixed to the class concords to build the first position form,
e.g. Cl.1. 1a + u > /i/ ~ lónhá/i (this)
   Cl.2. 1a + 6a > /síla/ (these)
   Cl.9. 1a + i > /i/ ~ lónhá/i (this)
   Cl.10. 1a + zi > /síla/ (these)

Sometimes it appears to be all stems except /mi/ and /kho/ (Zulu-land dialect), sometimes only the special stems and sometimes only the plural special stems, so that the situation is confused.

Self-standing forms only, e.g. /í/ ~ lónhá/ (this one), /umñáthó ló/ ~ umñáthó tónhá/ (this person), cf. /ló/mñáthó/ (this person). This applies also to the /yánh/ variant of the third position demonstrative.
The second position form is derived from the first by the addition of /h/, e.g. /ɪ6 > ɪ6w/ (that), /ɪ6a > ɪ6ə/ (those) (first gender)

The third position form is derived from the first by the addition of /yɑː/ to the inflectional allomorphs, /ɪhːw/, /ɪhːə/, etc., e.g. /ɪhːwɑː/, ɪhːəɑː/ (yonder - first gender).

There is a further form, possibly a fourth position form, based on the inflectional allomorphs, /ɪhːw/, /ɪhːə/, etc., e.g. /ɪhːwɑː/, ɪhːəɑː/ (far yonder - first gender).

The demonstrative when not self-standing is used as a prefix to the noun, as the tonal downstep shows, e.g. /ɪ6'mɑːnθ/ (this person), /ɪ6əmɑ:nθ ~ ɪ6ɚmɑ:nθ/ (these persons). The second position form is prefixed to the short form noun, e.g. /ɪ6əmɑ:nθ, ɪ6əmɑ:nθ, ɪ6əznɑnko, and the rest to the long form noun with initial elision, e.g. /ɪ6əznɑnko ~ ɪ6əznɑnko+, although the short form noun sometimes occurs here also, particularly in the Natal Coast dialect.

In this position the third position suffix /yɑː/ usually occurs as /yɑː/, e.g. /ɪb:znɑnko: 'nko:ko+ (yonder cattle). The first position monosyllabic demonstratives sometimes bring about tonal displacement, e.g. /ɪ6'mɑːnθ ~ ɪ6mɑ:nθ/ (this person), /ɪnɑnko ~ ɪnɑnko/ (this beast), /(lɑ:mə'kho:sl+ ~ ɪmə'kho:sl+) ~ ɪməmə'kho:sl+/ (these chiefs). This fact, together with the fact that tonal displacement is blocked by the initial consonant of demonstratives in the Natal Coast dialect, suggests that the consonant is sometimes the depressor /lh/, e.g. /ɪlh3mɑ:nθ/.

There are no ITM's with demonstratives, for the gender-number-person concord is not a prefix. The extra ITM is /ɪH/. The monosyllabic and disyllabic demonstratives constitute monotonal and bidental FTMs respectively, which are therefore marked by tonal downsteps, and the inflectional allomorphs of the monosyllabic demonstratives incorporate latent inherent length conditioning final stress, e.g. /kɑlʊi: ~ kɑlʊnɑ/ (to this one)

/nhɑlʊ: ~ nhɑlʊnɑ/ (with this one)

cf. /nhɑlʊ' ~ nhɑlʊnɑ/ (Natal Coast dialect);

e.g. /yh₁lʊ:, yhɪlʊw, yhɪlʊwɑ:/ (by it is this one, &c)

cf. /yhɪlʊ:, yhɪlʊw, yhɪlʊwɑ:/ (Natal Coast dialect);
e.g. njàngālò/ (just as this one)
cf. /njé'ngálò/ (Natal Coast dialect);
cf. /njé'ngálób/ (like it, class 5 absolute pronoun);

e.g. /ngáləndellə nìngáləlyb/ (by this way and by that)
/ngbənətə ńtək'kəlyəndəkə/ (it is a person of at that place)
/yfillsə nənágələlyəndəkə/ (it is dogs of roundabout that place).

Sometimes, because of its use as a prefix, the demonstrative FTM is marked by a tonal upstep instead of a tonal downstep,
e.g. /in'gānə yā'łōshəl, yā'łōshəl/ (child of this kraal, that kraal),
cf. /in'gānə yā'łōshəl, yā'łōshəl/.

The emphatic demonstratives, /nānghə/ (this one here), /nāmpə/ (Zulu land)—/nāshə/ (Natal) (these ones here), /nāsəlyə/ (yonder, ones over there), &c., are uninflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, but they can function predicatively without inflection,
e.g. /nānghə/ (here he is), /nāmpə/ (there he is).

5.3.3.1.5. Adverbs

Adverbs or genderless nominals have emerged fairly recently from the body of gender nominals. Although the initial syllables are no longer gender prefixes, it is best to treat in terms of ITM's, for to do otherwise results in exceptions wholesale. There are nevertheless a number of exceptions, which I mark with asterisks.

(a) Old or true adverbs

Adverbs with initial /ma/ (<class 6), /ə/ (<class 14),
/kə/ (<old class 12), /ku/ (<old class 17), behave as short form nouns as to TTM, in that the initial tone is always low,
e.g. I /məndələb/ (olden tomes), cf. /nəndələb/ (olden times)
/kəθəthənthə/ (bluntly), /kənsələb/ (with difficulty)
/kəbə/ (long ago)₁, /kənəbə/ (once)
/kəbə/ (far away) > /kəfəbə/ (fairly far away)

II /mənənəni ~ nəni/ (when?), /kənənəni*/ (how?)
/Chicheməb/ (at close quarters)

III /mənhələb+/ (in vain, for nothing)
/kəthələb+/ (very much), /kənəngə+/ (often)
/kəθəlahə+/ (painfully), /kəfəphə+/ (near)
/kəphələb+/ (only), /kəqələb+/ (first)

₁ cf. /kəbə/ (deficient verb?), e.g. /kəsəqəkədə Gəhəmbələb+/ (they had just gone).
Adverbs that behave as short form nouns have extra ITM \{LI\} for the first inflection and \{hi\} for subsequent inflections, e.g. 
/\textit{nkhakanye/} (not even once, after a negative verb) 
/\textit{nkhakancane/} (not in the slightest, after a negative verb) 
/\textit{nkhaknjane/} (definitely, regardless) 
/\textit{kholo nkhakati/} (well and badly) 
/\textit{labil zhakede, lizilb zangikelub/} (wild animals of far away) 
/\textit{banthu gangakelde nhangakeluphi/} (people of far and near) 
/\textit{khqalb > nhqalb > nhangkuelb/} (and firstly).

(b) New or noun adverbs

Adverbs with initial /\textit{pha/} (< old class 16), /e/ (< old class 23)\footnote{This is the regular locative prefix, and it is sometimes difficult to determine whether a word is an adverb or a locative noun. The ability to control grammatical agreement according to gender is the criterion: adverbs are genderless nominals.} and adverbs of various derivations, behave as full form nouns as to ITM, in that the initial toneme is always high, e.g. 
/\textit{phazhi ~ phsulh/} (above), /\textit{phenshi ~ phsulhi/} (ahead) 
/\textit{phnul ~ phanshi/} (below), /\textit{phamul ~ phamul/} (outside)\footnote{These adverbs belong to both I and IV in free variation.} 
/\textit{omul/} (olden times), cf. /\textit{andulh/} (olden times) 
/\textit{tvivi ~ ngovivi/} (at dawn) 
/\textit{izilb} (yesterday) 

\textbf{II} 
/\textit{phakathi/} (inside) 
/\textit{omavu ~ ngemavu/} (behind) 
/\textit{(omhoshu ~ ngomhoshu/} (tomorrow) 

\textbf{III} 
/\textit{nmuubhi/} (today) 
(Note: /\textit{nhnuubhi/} is also possible).
Adverbs that behave as full form nouns have extra ITM 1H,
e.g. /ngase'luxi/ (nearish, near as opposed to far)
/nhängase'luxi/ (and nearby)
/ŋhpházaluli nhängaphul/ (up above and down below)
/e'ũntuli bângululi/ (people of on this side)
/e'ũntuli bâ'phul kwéntule/ (people of on top of the hill)
/yhlnatmlihla+/ (it is today).

Noun adverbs derive from nouns, e.g. /phélaluli < fúluli/ (the sky), /phándleê < indléê/ (the veld), /ũntini < ũ'ũntini/ (day, midday),
but they constitute a separate part of speech in that the derivation is sometimes uncertain and sometimes nonexistant, and adverbs do not belong to noun classes.

The adverb /khbna/ (here, there) behaves in the matter of extra prefix inflection as the old class 17 pronoun, e.g. /ngâkhbna~
ngâkhbna/ (thereabouts), and the adverbs /lápâ/ (here) and /lápâ/ (there) as the old class 16 demonstratives, e.g. /ŋgâlápâ/ (hereabouts) and /ŋgâ'läphâ/ (Natal Coast dialect). The monosyllabic
adverbs /là/ (here) and /lé/ (there) have monotonal ITM's, e.g. /ŋghläi, nhângläi/ (hereabouts, even hereabouts) and /ŋgâ'läii, nhângâ'läi/ (Natal Coast dialect).

5.3.3.2. Verbal inflection

The tonemes used on suffixal inflection are determined by the
PTM's of verbal tonal conjugation (see 5.3.1.2.iii). The tonemes used on prefixal inflection are determined by the ITM's of verbal tonal conjugation, which are quite independent of the PTM's. There are also prefixes with inherent tonemes. The verbal ITM's are as follows:

1 The PTM's are shown in square brackets.
5.3.3.1. INFINITIVE MOOD

pos. tone class I. HL /UKU'66NA/ (to see) [HL]
tone class II. L'H /UKUHUN/ (to plow) [LH]

neg. I and II. H + nga. /UKUHUN/ (not to plow) [HH & LH]

The ITM's cover the prefix /uku/, which is a noun prefix of class 15. The positive ITM's are in fact the ITM's of nominal tone classes IV and I as well as the ITM's of verbal tone classes I and II, for the infinitive is both a noun and a verb. The former occurs in its tonal assimilation allomorph, e.g. /UKU'66NA/ (to see), and MTM A is used with polysyllabic stem infinitives, e.g. /UKUHUN/ (to see thoroughly). The latter is expandable, e.g. /UKUH/ (to plow), /UKUHUN/ (to plow thoroughly), and no MTM is used.

The object concord conditions the LH allomorph in both tone classes, and the ITM contrast thus disappears, e.g. /UKUH/ (to make them see), /UKUHUN/ (to make them plow). Infinitives of tone class II now use MTM B, the L'H allomorph with polysyllabic stems, e.g. /UKUH/ (to plow), /UKUHUN/ (to plow thoroughly), and the L allomorph with disyllabic stems where the object concord conditions the HL allomorph of ETM [HH], e.g. /UKUH/. The negative ITM is [H] + nga (inherent toneme infix), and the MTM C is used, with allomorphs L'H without object concord and (H ~ HL) ~ L'H with object concord, according to the presence or absence of penultimate length, e.g. /UKUHUN/ ~ UKUH (not to see it).

e.g. /UKU'66NA: /UKU'66NA/ (to see it), /UKUH/ (to help them see)
/UKUHUN/ (to help them), /UKUHUN/ (to write for them)
/UKUHUN/ (not to see it), /UKUHUN/ (not to see it)
/UKUHUN/ (not to see them), /UKUHUN/ (not to write them)
/UKUHUN/ (to go and see it), /UKUHUN/ (to go and see it)

/UKUHUN/ (to plow it), /UKUHUN/ (to help him plow)
/UKUHUN/ (to help them plow), /UKUHUN/ (to shut for them)
/UKUHUN/ (not to plow), /UKUHUN/ (not to plow it)
/UKUHUN/ (not to plow them), /UKUHUN/ (not to shut them)
/UKUHUN/ (to go and plow), /UKUHUN/ (to go and plow it)
As a noun, the infinitive controls grammatical agreement in accordance with its gender, e.g. /ku1funda nda 'ningala' khuyakkhathaza/ (too much learning tires us). It is inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, e.g. /gabinda fuma/ (by learning), /gab'indi fuma/ (by learning it), /sabindaya fundisa/ (rather than teaching them). It has a short form with prefix /ku/ and ITM /ka/, e.g. /ku1funda ku kuma/ (there is no learning), /ku1funda ku kuma, ku1limi kuma/, cf. /ku1lima/ (to plow), /ku1lima ku1funda/ (to help plow), /ku1funda ku1lima/ (to help him plow). It is thus the short form that is used as the base of the indicative present future tense, e.g. /nglo1funda/ (I shall run), /anglo1funda/ (I shall not run), cf. /ku1funda/ (to run - full form), but it is only with polysyllabic stem verbs of tone class II without object concord that the fact is apparent.

As a verb, the infinitive can incorporate a negative infix, object concords, and implication prefixes of future intention. Tonomorphologically it behaves as a verb on suffixal extension, whether by nominal inflection, e.g. /ku1funda l/ (in learning), or by verbal derivation, e.g. /ku1funda/ (to teach), or by both, e.g. /ku1funda kuma/ (in teaching them). Thus the infinitive is a noun as to its nominal prefix and nominal prefixal inflections (except that it can incorporate verbal prefixes) and in that it functions substantively to the verb, and a verb as to its verbal stem and verbal suffixal derivations (except that it can incorporate the nominal locative suffix) and in that it functions predicatively to the noun as its object.

5.3.3.2. II. IMPERATIVE MOD

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Class</th>
<th>L /yi16on/ ~ /yi16on+/ (see it)</th>
<th>H yi16on/ (plural)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>/yi16on/ (plural)</td>
<td>H yi16on/ (plural)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The ITM's cover the object concord; if there is no object concord, there is no ITM, e.g. /yi6on, li6a/. With verbs of tone class II, the object concord displaces its high toneme unless tonal displacement is blocked by a depressor, always with polysyllabic stem verbs and with disyllabic stem verbs in the Natal dialect e.g. /sillim6+ sillim6/ but not in the Zulu land dialect, e.g. /sillim6/1i,

1 Not /ku1funda/ as a noun, cf. /isa16ya > isi16ya/ (cattle kraal).

2 The object concords /yi, wu, wa/ occur as /i, u, a/ in the Zulu land dialect, with imperative verbs only.
regardless of whether it contains a depressor. The forms with depressors, e.g. /zilímê/ (pluck them) and /zívälé/ (shut them) are common to all dialects.

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{E.g. } & \text{ Gôna: } /lôôônê+/,
\text{ zilônê+/} \\
& \text{ /zibôôlê ~ zibôôlê+/ (write them)} \\
& \text{ /lôôônê+/ (make him see), /zilônê+/} \\
& \text{ /zifôôlê ~ zifôôlê+/ (write for them)} \\
\text{ Limâ: } & \text{ /ylilôô+ ~ yilimô+, zilimô+/} \\
& \text{ /zifôôlê ~ zifôôlê+/ (shut them)} \\
& \text{ /ylîlôô+/ (make him plow), /zïlîmô+/} \\
& \text{ /zifôôlê ~ zifôôlê+/ (shut for them)} \\
\text{ Gônâî: } & \text{ /ylôôônê+/,
\text{ /zilônê+/, /zôônîseô+/ (make him see)} \\
& \text{ /zibôôlêô+/ (write for them)} \\
\text{ Limâî: } & \text{ /ylîmô+/,
\text{ /ylilêseô+/ (make him plow)} \\
& \text{ /zifôôlêô+/ (write for them)} \\
\end{align*} \]

5.3.3.2. III. INDICATIVE MOOD (The ITM covers the subject concord)

1. Past tense

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{indep./dep. pos.} \\
\text{I & II } & \text{ H + ã: /sâ:sôná ~ sâ:sônê+/ (we saw)} \\
\text{(old dep. pos. > pos. past subjunctive).} \\
\text{(old indep. neg. > neg. past subjunctive (c) form).} \\
\text{(old dep. neg. > neg. past subjunctive (a) form).} \\
\end{align*} \]

---

1 Such tonal displacement also occurs with predicative adjectives, e.g. /Chôlîlî ~ Chôlîlî/ (two, class 2 reference), cf. /zîmbîlî ~ zîmbîlî/ (two, class 10 reference), but not in the Zululand dialect.

11 The Zululand dialect tries to maintain a distinction between L + ã: (1st and 2nd persons) and H + ã: (3rd person), e.g. /wâ:sônê+/ (you saw) and /wâ:sônê+/ (he saw), but succeeds only in abnormally slow speech.

111 Note permutations with object concord:

\[ \begin{align*}
\text{za: yîlômâ ~ za: yîlômê+} \quad \text{(tone class I)} \\
\text{za: zîlônê ~ za: zîlônê+}, \text{ za: zîlôô+ (tonal displacement)} \\
\text{za: zibôôlê ~ za: zibôôlê+}, \text{ za: zibôôlê+ (t.d. blocked)} \\
\text{za: zifôôlê ~ za: zifôôlê+} \quad \text{(tone class II)} \\
\text{za: zîlôôlô ~ za: zîlôôlô+ (tonal displacement)} \\
\text{za: zifôôlê ~ za: zifôôlê+ (t.d. blocked)} \\
\end{align*} \]

The male voice is apt to omit the object concord high toneme in /za: zifôôlê+/ but not in /za: zifôôlê+/.
2. Present tense

**indep. pss. (final)**

**perfect:** 1st and 2nd p. I & II. L  /si160nilb+/ (we have seen) [HL & LL]
  
  3rd p. I  H  /'l66'nilb+/ (they have seen) [HL]
  
  II L(a) /sil's/ (they have plowed) [LL]

**imperfect:** 1st and 2nd p. I & II. L /siyai60n/ (we see) [HH & LL]
  
  3rd p. I  H  /'a160n/ (they see) [HL]
  
  II L(a) /sil's/ (they see) [HL]

**future:** 1st and 2nd p. I & II. L /si160n/ (we shall see) [HL & LL]
  
  3rd p. I & II. H /'a160n/ (they shall see) [HL & LL]

**indep. pos. (nonfinal)**

**perfect:** 1st and 2nd p. I & II. L /si160n/ (a) [HL]
  
  3rd p. I  L /'a160n/ (a) [HL]
  
  II H /sil's/ [HL]

**imperfect:** All ps. I & II. L /si160n/ (d) [HL]
  
**future:** no final-nonfinal distinction.

**dep. pos. (final)**

**perfect:** All ps. I  L(b) /'a160n/ [HL]
  
  II H /sil's/ [HL]

**imperfect:** All ps. I & II. L(b) /si160n/ (a) [HL & LL]

**future:** All ps. I & II. H /si160n/ [HL & LL]

**dep. pos. (nonfinal)**

**perfect:** All ps. I  L(b) /'a160n/ (d) [HL]
  
  II H /sil's/ [HL]

---

1 *si160nilb+, siyi60nilb+ (tonal displacement)*

2 *s166'nilb+, s166'nilb+ (t.d. blocked)*

3 *'g166'nilb+ (tonal displacement)*

4 *'g166'nilb+ (t.d. blocked)*

5 *'g166'nilb+ (with object concord)*

6 *'g166'nilb+ (tonal displacement)*

7 *'g166'nilb+ (t.d. blocked)*

8 *'g166'nilb+ (with object concord)*

9 *'g166'nilb+ (tonal displacement)*

10 *'g166'nilb+ (t.d. blocked)*
imperfect: All ps. I & II. L (b) \( /s\text{s}16\text{bna}, \text{s}6\text{bna}/_{^{2}} \) \([\text{HL}/\text{HL} & \text{LL}]\)
future: no final-nonfinal distinction.

indep. neg.

perfect: I \( \text{a} + \text{L} \) \( /\text{s}16\text{bna}/ \) (we did not see)(c) \([\text{HL}]\) 
\( /\text{h}s\text{a}6\text{mibile}/ \) (they are not gone)(f) \([\text{HL}+]\) 
II \( \text{a} + \text{H} \) \( /\text{ha}6\text{f}1\text{banga}/ \) (we did not plow)(e) \([\text{HL}]\) 
\( /\text{h}s\text{a}6\text{mibile}/ \) (they are not hungry)(f) \([\text{HL}+]\)

imperfect: I \( \text{a} + \text{L} \) \( /\text{s}16\text{bna}/ \) (we do not see) \( ^{11} \) \([\text{HL}]\) 
II \( \text{a} + \text{H} \) \( /\text{ha}6\text{i}6\text{lim}/ \) (we do not plow) \( ^{111} \) \([\text{HL}]\)

future: I & II. \( \text{a} + \text{H} \) \( /\text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{\text{'}6\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6}/ \) \([\text{HL} & \text{LL}]\)

dep. neg.

perfect: I & II. \( \text{H} + \text{nga} \) \( /\text{s}1\text{ing\text{'}6\text{bna}/} \) (e) \([\text{HL}]\) 
\( /\text{\text{'}6\text{bna}/} \) \([\text{HL}+]\)

imperfect: I & II. \( \text{H} + \text{nga} \) \( /\text{si}6\text{g\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) \([\text{HL} & \text{HL}]\)

future: I & II. \( \text{H} + \text{nga} \) \( /\text{\text{'}6\text{g\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) \([\text{HL} & \text{LL}]\)

3. Recent past compound tenses:

\( ((\text{L} + \text{6})_{^{iv}} / (\text{L} + \text{6})_{^{iv}} \sim \text{6})_{^{iv}} + \) dependent present tenses.

\( \text{e.g.} \) \( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (we were seeing) \([\text{HH} & \text{LL}]\) 
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (with object concord)
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (2nd p. sg.) 
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (3rd p. sg.)

4. Remote past compound tenses:

\( (\text{H} + \text{6} + \text{6})_{^{iv}} / (\text{H} + \text{6})_{^{iv}} + \) dependent present tenses.

\( \text{e.g.} \) \( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (we were seeing) \([\text{HH} & \text{LL}]\) 
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (with object concord)
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (2nd p. sg.) 
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \sim \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (3rd p. sg.)

\( ^{1} \text{Note permutations with object concord:} \)
\( \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{s}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{z}1\text{y}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{z}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{z}1\text{y}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{z}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n/}} \) 
\( \text{of.} \) \( \text{z}1\text{y}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{z}1\text{is}1\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (indep. pos.).

\( ^{11} \text{Note permutations with object concord:} \)
\( \text{h}1\text{si}6\text{b\text{'}6\text{n}/}, \text{h}1\text{si}6\text{b\text{'}6\text{n/}}, \text{h}1\text{y}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n/}}, \text{h}1\text{si}6\text{b\text{'}6\text{n/}} \).

\( ^{111} \) \( \text{ha}6\text{f}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (tonal displacement) 
\( /\text{ha}6\text{f}1\text{\text{'}6\text{n}/} \) (t.d. blocked).

\( ^{iv} \) The full form occurs very rarely.
5. Future compound tenses:

\((L/H + zo + 6a) + \text{dependent present tenses.}\)

e.g.  
\(sizb6b sizg6nh+ \) (we will be seeing)  
\(6azb6b 6azg6nh+ \) (they will be seeing)

5.3.3.2. IV. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD (The ITM covers the subject concord)

1. Past tense

pos. I & II. L + h (b)  
/ah66nh/ (and we saw) [HL & HL/LL]

neg. I & II. h + a + ngal ngal  
/ang66nh/ (a form) [HL & HL/LL]

\(h + h + a; \)  
/6a66nh/ (c form) (g) [HL & HL/LL]

2. Present tense

pos. I  
\(L(a)^{\text{ii}} \) /si6bne/ (and we see, we should see) [HL/HH]

\(/si66nse/ \) (cause to see)

II  
\(L(a) \) /sibime/ (and we plow, we should plow) [HL/HH]

\(/sibime/ \) (cause to plow)

neg. I & II. h + ngal  
/sing66nlo ~ sing66nh/ [HH & LH]

---

1. Usually /nga/, possibly a combination of /nga/ and /a/ (c form).

ii  
ITM [HL] with disyllabic stem verbs.

ITM [LH] with polysyllabic stem verbs.

iii  
Note permutations:

\(sizg6nlo ~ siz66nlo \) (tonal displacement)

\(zlyf66nl ~ zlyf66nh\)

\(zibile ~ zibile \) (tonal displacement blocked)

\(zibile ~ zibile\)

\(siz656klo \) (we run away, polysyllabic stem)

\(siz656l6 \) (we write for, tonal displacement).

iv  
FTM [HL] without object concord.

FTM [HH] with object concord.

v  
Note permutations:

\(sif" y6ile \) (object concord has high tone)

\(zlyfimle \) (t.d. from subject to object)

\(si6fimle \) (t.d. from object to stem)

\(z" sif66le \) (t.d. blocked)

\(sifimle \) (we run, polysyllabic stem)

\(sibimle \) (we shut for, tonal displacement).

vi  
FTM [HL] with disyllabic stem verbs.

FTM [LH] with polysyllabic stem verbs without object concord.

FTM [HH] with polysyllabic stem verbs with object concord.
5.3.3.2. V POTENTIAL MOOD (The ITM covers the subject concord)

### 1. Present tense

**indep. pos.** I & II.$L +$ nga /síngá66ná/ (we can/may see)\[HL & HL/LL\]

**dep. pos.** I & II.$H +$ nga /síngá66ná/ [HL & HL/LL]

**indep./dep. neg.** I & II.$L/II.$H +$ nga /síngá66ná/ (a form) [HL & HL/LL]

/síngá66ná ~ síngá66ná+/ (a form) [HL & HL/LL]

### 2. Recent past compound tense

As for Indicative Mood

### 3. Remote past compound tense

As for Indicative Mood

**Note:**

(a) The object concord conditions a morphotonemic change from L to H with these indep. pos. tenses of tone class II (3rd person),

e.g. /síyálimá+ > síyálimá+/, /síyálimá+ > síyálimá+/;

cf. /síllimá+ > síllimá+/, /síyálimá+ > síyálimá+; and with the pos. present subjunctive of tone class III,

e.g. /síyálimá > síyálimá ~ síyálimá+/.

(b) The object concord conditions a morphotonemic change from L to H with these dep. pos. tenses,

e.g. /síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/ < /sí66ná > sí66ná+/,

/síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/ < /sí66ná > sí66ná+;

/síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/, cf. /síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/ (indep.); and with the pos. past subjunctive (old dep. pos. past indicative),

e.g. /síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/.

(c) The object concord conditions a morphotonemic change from L to H with these indep. neg. tenses of tone class I,

e.g. /síyá166ná > síyá166ná+/,

/síyá166ná > síyá166ná+.

(d) These forms indicate recent past action only. To indicate present perfect state the final forms occur nonfinally. There is a distinction dependently,

e.g. /gáhámbíllé ~ gáhámbíllé+/ (they being gone),

but not independently,

e.g. /gáhámbíllé ~ gáhámbíllé+/ (they are gone).

(e) Now functioning as negative past tense, thus replacing the old negative past tense now functioning as negative past subjunctive tense. It refers to both recent past ("they have not seen")

---

1 Note permutations:

síngá66ná, síngá166ná (tonal displacement)

síyá166ná, síyá166ná (t.d. blocked).

ii And of tone class I with polysyllabic stem verbs.
and remote past ("they did not see") according to context.

(f) These forms indicate present perfect state only. They are used predominantly with inchoative verbs, especially stative verbs, e.g. /bɔtkɔthɛlɛ/ (they are not tired). There are no nonfinal forms.

(g) The (b) form occurs only with verbs of tone class II and differs from the (a) form only as to FTH. The (c) form is less common.

(h) It is likely that the high toneme of the prefix has been transferred to the stem in cases where the object concord brings about a morphotonemic change from L to H, thus restoring the high toneme (see a, b, c, above):

a. indep. pos. present tense (final) of tone class II,
   e.g. */6alimile/ > 6alimile/, cf. /sillimile/,
   */6ayallma/ > 6ayallma/, cf. /syyallma/,
   cf. /666'nille/, 6ay'a'6onile/ (tone class I).

b. dep. pos. present tense
   e.g. */6ilmia > 6ilmia/, cf. /sillma/ (indep.),
   cf. /syyilmia/ (future aspect), reflecting its origin in /syya/ (we are going to), for monosyllabic stem verbs retain the high toneme.
   cf. /sillmille/ (tone class II) and /sil6onile/ (tone class I), where the former retains the high toneme for the sake of conjugational contrast.

c. indep. neg. present tense
   e.g. */asi66na > 6an6nai/, cf. /syyilmia/ (tone class II),
   where the latter retains the high toneme for the sake of conjugational contrast.

d. also indep. pos. present imperfect tense (nonfinal) of tone class II,
   e.g. */6alimha > 6alimha/, cf. /sillma/,
   cf. /6ayallma, syyilmia/ (future aspect), reflecting its origin in /6ayla, syla/, for monosyllabic stem verbs retain the toneme contrast.

e. also the morphotonemic effects of the object concord suggest an original "tonal distinctiveness" (Richardson) in itself, for it frequently determines a high toneme on

---

1 See Richardson: The Role of Tone in Sukuma (S.C.A.S. 1959).
the following syllable with verbs of tone class II. It does not do so with verbs of tone class I, however, and it is generally impossible to attribute "tonal distinctiveness" to individual verbal syllables in Zulu.

Medial Tonal morphemes

The tonemes not determined by FTMs and ITMs or by the prefixes with inherent tonemes, are determined by the MTMs A, B, C, and BA, described briefly above (5.3.0.3.) and in detail below.

Verbs of tone class I with FTMs ~HL~ use MTM A with allomorph L+, which is subject to tonal assimilation,

\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (we bring for)
\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (they bring for)
\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (we bring for him)
\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (we do not bring for him).

Verbs of tone class II with FTMs ~LL~ use MTM B with allomorphs L+ ~ (L ~ L'H) ~ (H ~ L'H), which are subject to tonal assimilation. The allomorph L+ is used in the indep. pos. present perfect indicative nonfinal form,

\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (we choose for)
\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (they choose for)
\[ /\text{alēthelh}/ \] (we choose for him),

and in the imperfect and perfect final forms for the 1st and 2nd persons without object concords, and in the future aspect for all persons without object concords,

\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (we are running)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (we have run)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they will run).

The allomorph H ~ L'H is used in the imperfect and perfect final forms for the 3rd person without object concords,

\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they are choosing - H allomorph)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they are running - LH allomorph)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they have chosen - H allomorph)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they have run - LH allomorph, with tonal displacement).

The allomorph L ~ L'H is used in all final forms with object concords,

\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (we are choosing for him - LLH allomorph)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (we have chosen it - LH allomorph)
\[ /\text{alēhjimēl}/ \] (they will choose it - L allomorph).
The allomorph $L^+$ is also used in the imperfect final form for all persons with object concords with disyllabic stem verbs only, so that neither $/ya/$ nor the object concord hears a high tone except by tonal assimilation to or tonal displacement from the previous syllable,

e.g. /slyyikhéthâh+/ (we choose it - LL allomorph)
/ebyýi'khéthâh+/ (they choose it - HH allomorph due to tonal assimilation)
/slyyizkhéthâh+/ (they choose them - HL allomorph due to tonal displacement)

Otherwise only the allomorphs ($H \sim L^+H$) and ($L \sim L^+H$) are used, the former conditioned by subject concords and the latter by object concords. Where they concur, the object concord takes precedence as the conditioning factor, so that it never bears a high tone except by tonal assimilation to or tonal displacement from the previous syllable,

e.g. /síkhéthâh/ (we choose it) 
/síkhéthâhâ/ (indep. pos. present imperfect tense) 
/y/síkhéthâh/ (dep. $- H \sim LH$ allomorph conditioned by subject concord)

Verbs of tone class II with $FTM \sim LH$ use $MTM BA$ with allomorphs ($H \sim L^+H$) $\sim$ ($L \sim L^+H$) conditioned by subject and object concords respectively. Here, however, the high tones are realized on nondepressor syllables only. The fact that the past subjunctive (positive and negative) and the present potential (positive and negative) use $FTM \sim HL$ with $MTM BA$ and $FTM \sim LL$ with $MTM B$ as alternatives, points to the conclusion that the tenses now using $FTM \sim HL$ with $MTM BA$ once used $FTM \sim LL$ with $MTM B$. Here is a symptom of the drift to extinction of verbal tone class II.

e.g. /sajzlkhe'thêl/ (we chose for them) and
/sajlge'zeI/ (we washed for them - past subj. (a) form).

Verbs of tone class I with $FTM \sim RHn$ and verbs of tone class II with $FTM \sim LH$ (disyllabic stems) or $FTM \sim HH$ (polysyllabic stems), with

---

1 The tonal upstep is often not apparent, a further sign of the drift from $MTM B$ to $MTM A$, of which $MTM BA$ represents an intermediate stage.
inherent toneme infixes, use MTM C with allomorphs L+ without object concord and (H ~ HL+) ~ L+ with object concord, according to the presence or absence of penultimate length, e.g. /sâ:kâle6'lk/ (we ran away)
/bûngâyâ6'6onâ/ (not to see it)
/bûngâyâll'mâ/ (not to plow it)
/sâ:yâ6'6e6'lk/ (we helped him wash).

Verbs of both tone classes with FTM [HL] and the negative infix /nc/ also use MTM C,
e.g. /sûngâ6'6â6'nâ/ ~ /sûngâ6'6â6'nâ/ (we did not see it).
In the negative past subjunctive MTM C is used in addition to MTM A (all low tones) and MTM B (an antepenultimate high tone), e.g. /sûngâyâ6'â6'hâ/ (we did not bring for him)
/sângâyâ6'kâ6'hâ/ (and we did not choose for him).

Verbs of tone class I with FTM [HH] and no inherent toneme infix (pos. present subjunctive with object concord) use MTM A,
e.g. /sî6'yâ6'â6/ (we should bring it, them)
/sâ:6'â6'hâ/ (we should bring for them).

Disyllabic stem verbs of tone class II with FTM [H] and no inherent toneme infix (pos. present subjunctive with object concord) use MTM B, but the object concord conditions the H ~ L'H allomorph instead of the L~L'H allomorph, i.e. it bears the high tone that it conditions itself,
e.g. /sî'yâ6'â6'hâ/ (we should choose it)
/sî'6'â6'â6'hâ/ (we should wash them)
/sâ:6'â6'hâ/ ~ /sâ:6'â6'hâ/ (we should choose them).

Polyssyllabic stem verbs of tone class II with FTM [HH] and no inherent toneme infix (pos. present subjunctive with object concord) use MTM BA,
e.g. /sâ:6'yâ6'hâ'â6'hâ/ (we should choose for them)
/sâ:6'â6'hâ/ (we should wash for them).

Polyssyllabic stem verbs of tone class II with FTM [HL] and no inherent toneme infix (pos. present subjunctive without object concord) use MTM B,
e.g. /sâ:6'yâ6'hâ'â6'/ (we should choose for)
/sâ:6'â6'/ (we should wash for).

Polyssyllabic stem verbs of tone class I use FTM [HL] with MTM B here also, which is the only occasion on which they do so,
e.g. /sâ:6'yâ6'/ (we should bring for).

1We could attribute the effect to the subject concord, but the rule is that where subject concord and object concord concur, the latter takes precedence as the conditioning factor.
Polysyllabic stem verbs of tone class I use FTM [\{LL\}] with MTM B in the indep.pos.present perfect indicative final form, which is the only occasion on which they do so,
  e.g. /basi\'bonisallb+/ (they have shown us).
Here the L'H allomorph is conditioned by all subject concords,
  e.g. /a\'ladl\'allb+; \'ladl\'allb+ (we/they have run away), whereas
with verbs of tone class II the L'H allomorph is conditioned by
3rd person subject concords only, e.g. /s'iyil\'allb+; \'g\'i\'l\'allb+/
  (we/they have run).
Verbs of both tone classes use MTM A in all forms of the impera-
tive mood, in the /b:/ (nonfinal positive), /l\'e:/ (final indep.
eg.) and /l\'e:/ (final dep. pos.) form of the indicative present
perfect tense,
  e.g. /h\'ah\'hambil\'e+/ (they are not gone - tone class I)
  /h\'ah\'hambil\'e+ (they are not hungry - tone class II)
  /s'iyil\'h\'illb+/ (they having brought it - tone class I)
  /s'iyik\'h\'illb+/ (they having chosen it - tone class II).

5.3.4. Derivation

5.3.4.1. Nominal derivation

The tonal effects of nominal derivation by the suffixes /\'an\'a/ (diminutive), /kaz\'a~\'az\'a/ (augmentative or feminine), /k\'az\'a~
\'az\'a/(feminine diminutive), are the same as the tonal effects of
nominal inflection by the locative suffix /inl/.
These suffixes
determine nominal declension on the basis of inherent lexical
tone-

II  ITM [\{HL\}] + FTM [\{LM\}]
  + LL > (L)  HL
  + LL > (LH)  LL
  e.g. /iz\'ind\'bng6/ (walls) > /iz\'ind\'bng\'an6/
       /am\'akh\'hln\'a/ (elders) > /am\'akh\'hln\'a/
       /iz\'ink\'os6/ (cattle) > /iz\'ink\'os\'\'az\'a/ (cows)
       /int\'om\'b\'i/ (girl) > /int\'om\'b\'ik\'az\'a+/ (large girl)

III  ITM [\{HL\}] + FTM [\{HN\}]
  + LL > (L)  HL
  + LL > (LH)  LL
  e.g. /iz\'ink\'h66/ (oxen) > /iz\'ink\'k\'h66\'an6/
       /am\'akh\'h\'on6/ (chiefs) > /am\'akh\'h\'on6\'an6/ (chief's sons)
       /in\'k\'os6/ (chief) > /ink\'\'os6\'\'az\'a/ (chief's wife)
       /in\'k\'os6/ (chief) > /ink\'\'os\'\'az\'a/ (chief's daughter)
       /\'az\'ink\'h66/ (big ones) > /\'az\'ink\'h66\'an6/ (bigger).
IV  ITM  $\{HL\} + FTM  $\{HL\}$
+ LL > (H)  LL
+ LL > (LH)  LL

e.g. /izinsizwâh/ (young men) > /izinsizwâh/
/âmûqânâh/ (warriors) > /âmûqânâh/
/in'sâh/ (child) > /ingânyâhâ/ (small child)
/eziwâhâ/ (small ones) > /ezîwâhâ/ (smallish)

I  ITM  $\{L'H\} + FTM  $\{LL\}$
+ LL > (H)  LL
+ LL > (LH)  LL

e.g. /âmûdâh/ (men) > /âmûdâhâh/ (sons)
/âmûdâh/ (men) > /âmûdâhâkâzâh/ (daughters)
/âmûdâh/ (men) > /âmûdâhâánâh/ (little daughters)
/phambîlâ/ (ahead) > /phambîlâhâ/ (slightly ahead)

Thus all single extended nominals have either FTM  $\{HL\}$ or FTM  $\{LL\}$, and all doubly extended nominals have FTM  $\{LL\}$

Nouns derived from verbs of tone class I belong to nominal tone classes III and IV which have the affinity of FTM's $\{HH\}$ and $\{HL\}$, and nouns derived from verbs of tone class II belong to nominal tone classes I and II which have the affinity of FTM's $\{LL\}$ and $\{LH\}$.

The great majority belong to tone classes I and IV; derivations in tone class III are less common and in tone class II very rare.

e.g. /âd'hâmbî/ (traveller)
/âd'fûndî/ (learner)
/isî'fûndî/ (lesson)
/âsî'fûndî/ (teacher)
/isî'fûndî/ (rope, $<$ /fûndî/ tie)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (vomiting)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (question, $<$ /hîlâ/ ask)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (buyer)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (barter)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (seller)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (visitor)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (clan name)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (praises)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (chair, $<$ /hîlâ/ sit)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (carve)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (choose)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (choice)
/âsî'hîlâ/ (election)

\[\text{i} \quad \text{The question of nominals with simple polysyllabic stems (as opposed to derivative stems) is considered in Chapter 6.}\]

\[\text{ii} \quad \text{Note the irregular derivation /âd'fûndî/ (missionary, minister), perhaps in imitation of the missionary's pronunciation.}\]

\[\text{iii} \quad \text{Note the tonal displacement of the high toneme from prefix to stem.}\]
Compound nouns belong to the tone class of the last constituent and the FTM of the first constituent is replaced by the NTM, thus showing the predominance of imposed grammatical tone over inherent lexical tone.

\[ /\text{isi}^\text{gijim}^\text{a}^\text{m} / \text{(fast runner)} \]
\[ /\text{isi}^\text{gijim}^\text{a}^\text{m}^+ / \text{(messenger)} \]

5.3.4.2. Verbal derivation

There are no tonal effects of verbal derivation by the suffixes /\text{e}^\text{a}/, /\text{e}^\text{ik}/, /\text{e}^\text{a}^\text{ni}/, /\text{e}^\text{a}/; the FTM's of verbal conjugation are imposed regardless of the morphological composition of the final couplet, e.g. /\text{al}^\text{i}^\text{m}^\text{n}^\text{a}^\text{n}^\text{a}^\text{m}/ > /\text{al}^\text{i}^\text{m}^\text{n}^\text{a}^\text{m}^+ / (present indicative).

Verbs derived from ideophones belong mostly to tone class II, for the great majority of ideophones have inherent low tonemes on all syllables. The examples are given in the infinitive without its prefix.

\[ /\text{b}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}/ > /\text{b}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{k}/ \text{(collapse), /b}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{a}/ \text{(demolish)} \]
\[ /\text{d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}/ > /\text{d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{k}/ \text{(split, intrans.), /d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{l}/ \text{(split, trans.)} \]
\[ /\text{g}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{m}^\text{h}/ > /\text{g}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{m}^\text{h}^\text{k}/ \text{(get punctured), /g}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{m}^\text{h}^\text{a}/ \text{(puncture)} \]
\[ /\text{p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{g}/ > /\text{p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{g}^\text{h}/ \text{(snap, intrans.), /p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{g}^\text{a}/ \text{(snap, trans.)} \]
\[ /\text{p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{c}/ > /\text{p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{c}^\text{k}/ \text{(be rubbed smooth), /p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{c}^\text{l}/ \text{(rub smooth), /p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{c}^\text{h}/ \text{(polish), /p}^\text{h}^\text{a}^\text{c}^\text{a}^\text{z}^\text{k}/ \text{(become polished)} \]
\[ /\text{d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}/ > /\text{d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{k}/ \text{(tear, intrans.), /d}^\text{a}^\text{a}^\text{h}^\text{l}/ \text{(tear, trans.)} \text{ (tonal displacement)} \]
\[ /\text{k}^\text{h}^\text{m}^\text{u}/ > /\text{k}^\text{h}^\text{m}^\text{u}^\text{k}/ \text{(come off/out), /k}^\text{h}^\text{m}^\text{u}^\text{l}/ \text{(take off/out) (exception)} \]

---

\[ ^1 \text{Dดอก's dictionary gives /l}^\text{is}^\text{gijim}^\text{a}/, but polysyllabic stem nouns with FTM /\text{L}^\text{h}/ are now very rare. Note also /\text{th}^\text{b}^\text{m}^\text{h}/ (reach puberty), but this is an old derivation and the average Zulu speaker sees no connection.} \]
\[ ^{ii} \text{Hence /l}^\text{mp}^\text{c}^\text{u}^\text{k}/, l}^\text{mp}^\text{c}^\text{u}^\text{z}^\text{k}/ (civilization).} \]
5.3.5. Nomino-verbal constructions

5.3.5.1. Copulative constructions

These constructions prefix verbal concords to nominal bases and conjugate in the indicative mood through tenses of imperfect aspect only, independent and dependent, positive and negative, e.g. /slkhōnə/ (we are present - independent positive present imperfect tense)

/šēśi:khōnə/ (we were present - compound recent past imperfect tense)

/sāsēši:khōnə ~ sāsēśi:khōnə/ (we were present - compound remote past imperfect tense)

In the independent positive present tense the verbal concords use the ITM's of the independent positive present indicative tense (final form), i.e. [H] for 1st and 2nd persons and [H] for 3rd persons. The nominal bases with full form nouns are inflected forms only, and with short form nouns inflected forms only when the noun is qualified by an irregular adjective, e.g. /d"n:jānghāmāntu mēnə/ (he is like what sort of person?), and simple forms only in copulative constructions of a particular type, e.g. /dālithō zīndē/ (he is long-limbed). Pronouns and demonstratives use inflected forms only, except the uninflectionable inclusive and exclusive pronouns, e.g. /sīsōmē/ (we are all), /dābōnē/ (they are all), /ngōngēdē/ (I am alone). Adverbs use either simple or inflected forms, but there are limitations in inflection and in copulative construction. Only the instrumentive inflection occurs freely in copulative constructions, e.g. /dāngāsēdōzē/ (they are nearby), whereas with gender nominals it occurs very rarely, e.g. /d"cālē"linghāshēnkēmō/ (the court-case is over cattle). Relative constructions use inflected forms only, e.g. /dāngādē"hāmbēyē/ (they are travellers).

e.g. /sīnhāmādē/ (we are men), /dāngāmādē/ (they are men)
/sīnhēndōdē/ (we have a son), /dānhēndōdē/ (they have a son)
/dā"nēhēn"gānē/ (they have a child,
/dā"n:jē"ngērēnjē/ (they are like dogs)
/kēntwēnē kāsēntēkēmē/ (the children are on the hill)
/žēnkēmē sīsēn"tākēmē/ (the cattle are on the hill)
/sīyē/ (we are they), /sīnē"ngēdē/ (we are like them)
/ngēnēwē/ (I am with you), /ngēnēyē/ (I am with him)
/ūnhēsē/ (he has them), /ūkīthē/ (he is at our place)
In the independent negative present tense the verbal concords use the ITM's of the independent negative present indicative tense, i.e. a + II (of verbal tone class II) with constructions based on conjunctive nominals, and a + I (of verbal tone class I) otherwise. The negative counterparts to the positive constructions based on inflected full form nouns with extra ITM [II] have inflected short form nouns with extra ITM [I] as bases, e.g. /ã'nhzlnja/ (they have dogs) and /ã'nhzlnja/ (they have no dogs), except that the simple form is used instead of the agentive inflection, e.g. /ã'nhzlnja/ (they are dogs) and /ã'nhzlnja/ (they are not dogs)\textsuperscript{ii}. Some speakers admit /ã'nhzlnja/ as a possibility, but it is seldom used. There are no negative counterparts to the positive constructions based on short form nouns, except that /ã'nhzlnja/ could be said in direct contradiction to /ã'nhzlnja/ (he is long-limbed). With pronouns and demonstratives the bases are the same in the negative as in the positive, except that the extra ITM is [I] instead of [II]. Pronouns use inflectional allomorph (e) with extra ITM [I] (see 5.3.3.1.3.), e.g. /ã'zyh166/ (we are not they), cf. /ã'zyh166/ (positive), /ã'nhkthi/ (they are not with us), cf. /ã'nhkthi/ (positive), and the simple form occurs as an alternative to the agentive inflection, e.g. /ã'lebnâ ~ ã'lehy166/ (we are not they)\textsuperscript{iii}. With

\textsuperscript{1} Morphophonemic change often substitutes a low toneme for an initial high toneme followed by a tonal upstep.

\textsuperscript{ii} The agentive inflection is very rare with short form nouns, which can function agentively or predicatively without inflection, e.g. /ã'lebnâ mnh/ (we are not seen by anyone), /mnh mnl 'skw'nsll/ (it is what short of person who has done it?)

\textsuperscript{iii} There is also a negative agentive inflection in /si~mu/, e.g. /ã'iyh166 ~ ã'iyh166/ (we are not they), /ângâshyê ~ ângâshyê/ (I am not he), but it is not common.
adverbs and locative nominals the negative counterparts to the positive constructions use the negative allomorph /khb/ of the adverb /khbná/ii, e.g. /6 dá'láphá/ (they are here) > /6 ákhb láphá/ (they are not here). Some speakers admit /6áaláphá/ as a possibility, but it is seldom used. There are no negative constructions based on relative constructions, e.g. /6áyhl66 "6á"hákhb+/ (they are not travellers).

e.g. /6áxakhbödá/ (they are not men)
/6áxáláfákh/ (we are not boys)
/6áxanhándoðána/ (they have no son)
/6áxanhángáná/ (we have no child)ii
/6áxinhángáná/ (the cattle are not on the hill)
/6áxylíh66 ~6áxylíh66ná ~6áxlhángáná/ (we are not they)
/6áxihlngäng/ (I am not with him), /6ákánhámá/ (he is not with me)ii
/6áxylíh166/ (we are not these ones)
/6ákhb phdkhkthi (~6áphákhkthi)/ (they are not inside)
/6ángáná 6ákhhb+/ (the children are not present)iii.

In the dependent positive present tense (which is also used in compound tenses) the verbal concords use the ITM [H] with allomorphs [HL] ~ [H] in free variation, together with the phoneme of morphological length which tends to disappear when the nominal base consists

---

i This allomorph conditions a high toneme on the previous syllable. It has latent "i" in the Natal dialect, e.g. /6ákähná > 6ákhhb/ (he is/is not present), /6ákhhbná > 6ákhhb/ (they are/are not present), but not in the Zululand dialect, e.g. /6ákhhb, 6ákhhb/.

ii Some speakers maintain that it is possible to distinguish between "to have" and "to be with", in the negative but not in the positive, thus: /6áxinhángáná/ (we have no child) and /6áxinhángáná/ (we are not with a child), /6áxinhmó"ín'gáná/ (we do not have the child) and /6áxinhóy"ín'gáná/ (we are not with the child), /6ákánhámá/ (he does not have them), /6áknházó/ (he is not with them), but others deny it.

iii There is a common "mistake" in the superimposition of the toneme pattern L'H with negative copulative constructions: /6áknhósi+/ instead of /6ákánhósi+/ (he is not a chief), /6áylnklá/ instead of /6áylnklá/ (he is not great), /6ángódewá/ instead of /6ángódewá/ (I am not alone), especially in the seldom used (perhaps "grammatically incorrect") constructions such as /6áylnkómó+/ . Speakers do not accept these forms when they are pointed out to them. I can only suggest "continent intonation": /6áxakhbólá/ -(6áncángá)/, with the conclusion omitted as obvious, of. English: /they are not big (---)--- (they are small)/.
of more than three syllables. The nominal base is as for the
independent tense.

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{z}i:\text{ng}	ext{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we being men)\]
\[/\text{z}i:\text{ng}	ext{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they having a son)\]
\[/\text{z}i:\text{ng}	ext{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we being things)\]
\[/\text{i}:\text{nh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (if the cattle are on the hill)\]
\[/\text{i}:\text{nh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (if we were they)\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (if we were like them)\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they being with you), /\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they being with him)\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (he having them), /\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (he being at our home)\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m} \text{\text-si}\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they being here)\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m} \text{\text-si}\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (if they are outside),\]
\[cf. /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they are outside);\]
\[/\text{zh}	ext{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (if the children are present),\]
\[cf. /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they are present).\]

In the dependent negative present tense (which is also used in
compound tenses) the verbal concords use the ITM's of the dependent
negative present indicative tense, i.e. H + nga (for /nga/ occurs
as /nga/ in copulative constructions). The nominal base is as for
the independent tense, except that the negative infix conditions a
high toneme on the conjunctive prefix.

\[\text{e.g. } /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they not being men)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we not being boys)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}	ext{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they having no son),\]
\[cf. /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}	ext{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (indep.)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we having no child),\]
\[cf. /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (indep.)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we not being them)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we not being with them)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they not being with us)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (they not being with us)\]
\[/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (he not being with us), but others deny it.\]

1 The verbal concords of the dependent positive present indicative
tense use the ITM [L] with allomorphs H ~ L according to the pre­
sent or absence of the object concord.

2 Depressors do not displace high tonemes from long vowel syllables.

3 Again some speakers maintain that it is possible to distinguish
between "to have" and "to be with", thus: /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we
having no child) and /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (we not being with a child),
/\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (he not having them) and /\text{zh}\text{\text-app-\text-m}\text{\text-sub-\text-m}\text{am}d\text{\text-app-\text-m}/ (he not having
with them), but others deny it.

4 The allomorph /kho/ conditions a high toneme on the previous
syllable in all circumstances.
Adjectives have no independent function: they function only in nominative-verbal constructions. The simple forms are uninflectionable except by verbal prefixes in copulative constructions which function predicatively, e.g. /i'hašaši lîf'nyámâ/ (the horse is black), and which the addition of relative prefixes converts to relative copulative constructions which function qualificatively, e.g. /lîf'nyámâ/ (the black horse), or substantively, e.g. /élîf'nyâmâ/ (the black one), in which case they are inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, e.g. /kwéf'nyâmâ/ (on the black one), and so the process recommences, e.g. /â'kwéf'nyâmâ/ (he is on the black one).

Noun adjectives in copulative constructions conjugate regularly, but true adjectives have no verbal prefixes in the independent positive present tense except for the 1st and 2nd persons, and the change in function is reflected in the change from ITM ¼ to ITM ½. The prefix high tone undergoes tonal displacement regardless of whether the prefix contains a depressor, in the Natal dialect but not in the Zululand dialect.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>noun adjectives</th>
<th>true adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/lîf'nyâmâ/ (it is black)</td>
<td>/lîf'dâl/ (it is old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'nyâmâ/ (they are black)</td>
<td>/â'dâl/ (they are old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/hâ'nyâmâ/ (it is not black)</td>
<td>/hâ'lídâl/ (it is not old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/hwâ'nyâmâ/ (they are not black)</td>
<td>/hwâ'hâ'lídâl/ (they are not old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/lîf'nyâmâ/ (it being black)</td>
<td>/lîf'ilídâl/ (it being old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/lîngâ'nyâmâ/ (it not being black)</td>
<td>/lîngâ'lídâl/ (it not being old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'nyâmâ/ (they are black)</td>
<td>/â'ncânë/ (they are small)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'ncânë/ (Zululand)</td>
<td>/â'ncânë/ (Zululand)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'hâ'nyâmâ/ (they are not black)</td>
<td>/â'hâ'ncânë/ (they are not small)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'nhî'nyâmâ/ (we are black)</td>
<td>/â'nhî'ncânë/ (we are small)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/hâ'hâ'nyâmâ/ (we are not black)</td>
<td>/hâ'hî'ncânë/ (we are not small)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'nhî'lophë+/ (they are white)</td>
<td>/â'hî'khålâb+/ (they are large)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'hî'lophë+/ (they are not white)</td>
<td>/â'hî'khålâb+/ (they are not large)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'nhî'lophë+/ (they being white)</td>
<td>/â'hî'khålâb+/ (they being large)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>true adjective (2nd person)</td>
<td>true adjective (3rd person)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'hîlâ/ (we are good)</td>
<td>/â'hîlâ/ (we are good)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'hîlë/ (we are not good)</td>
<td>/â'hîlë/ (they are not good)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/â'hîë/ (you are nice)</td>
<td>/â'hîlë/ (he is nice)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
With true adjectives of class 9, the agentive prefix /yhi/ is used in the absence of a verbal prefix in the independent positive present tense, e.g. /yhintsha+/ (it is new), cf. /šasha+/ (they are young),
e.g. /yhi'ndālha+/ (it is old), cf. /šādālha+/ (they are old),
cf. /šintsha+/ and /šindālha+/ (dependent positive).

This prefix is retained even in the negative with monosyllabic stem adjectives,
e.g. /aylyhintsha+/ (indep.), /ingeyhintsha+/ (dep.),
cf. /aylndala+/ (indep.), /ingendala+/ (dep.)

Irregular adjectives are different from true adjectives in that they have an independent function, either qualitative to the short form noun, e.g. /šunfà mántà mānì+/(what sort of person do they want?), or substantive as object only, e.g. /šunfhà māphì+/ (which one do they want?)i. They are therefore directly inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes, e.g. /šumphì+/ (to which one?), /nhàmaphì+/ (with which one?)ii, and these inflected forms occur as copulative construction bases, e.g. /šàmumphì+/ umāl+/ (they are at which kraal?), /šàmumphì+/ ŋátiwànhàmi+ (they are with which child?), as well as the simple forms, e.g. /ŋāmghànyè/(I am one). Here, like regular true adjectives, they have no verbal prefix in the independent positive present tense except for the 1st and 2nd persons, but there is a tonal change, e.g. /mùnyè > mìnyè/

---

1 The Zululand dialect uses the verbal prefix /i/ here, e.g. /štushà+/, ŋindālha+/ (pos.), /aylyintsha+, ŋyindālha+/ (neg.).

ii As subject they occur only predicatively, e.g. /miphì ŋkwè'nzilè+/ (it is which one who has done it?), cf. the interrogative noun /šàmìfi+/ (who?): /šunfhà ŋmìfi+/ (whom do they want?), /ŋāmghànyè ŋkwè'nzilè+/ (who has done it?).

iii The adjective /mi/ always follows the noun and so is never inflected. However, its root is inflectionable by nominal extra prefixes (see 5.3.3.1.2.), e.g. /nhàni+/ (with what?), ngàni+/ (by means of what? how? why?).
(he is one). The adjective /ϕi?/ also has an agentive inflection, e.g. /mϕi? > mϕi+ ~ (nϕi+mϕi+~yϕi+mϕi+)/ (by/it is which one?) /cϕi? > cϕi+~yϕi+cϕi+/ (which are they?) cf. /cϕi+/ (where are they?)

Copula verb constructions consist of the copula verb followed by the copulative construction nominal bases in close syntactical relationship. Such constructions are capable of full verbal conjugation, e.g. infinitive: /ukă = yhi|mabd/ (to be a man) /ukangă6i = nă1db/ (not to be a man) /ukă = (s)e:khay+1/ (to be at home) /ukă = khană/ (to be present) /ukangă6i = khană/ (not to be present) imperative: /y16a = yhi|qhawē/ (be a warrior) /y16an1 = nϕi|qhawē/ (be warriors) indicative past tense: /să:6a-6Mala/ (we became old) /să:6a-6UKa6u/ (we became sharp) indicative present tense: positive: /să6a - qhengqondb/ (he is getting sense) negative: /kha61 = nhangqondb/ (he is not getting sense) subjunctive present tense: positive: /să6a-nhā66/ (he should be with them) negative: /kangā6i-nhā66/ (he should not be with them) potential present tense: /angā6a-yhīnkōs1+/ (he may become a chief) cf. /angāyhīnkōs1+/ (he may be a chief).

5.3.5.2. Relative constructions

These constructions prefix the relative morpheme ɬa to verbal and copulative constructions, which converts them from verbal predicative function to nominal qualificative function or substantive function (self-standing relative constructions). They are furthermore inflectionable as nominals. The allomorphs of the relative morpheme are/(a ~ e ~ o) ~ (a: e: ~ o:)/ according to coalescence i Locative nominals usually preplace "a" as on direct inflection. ii The negative allomorph also occurs, but note the alternatives: /ukangă6ikb ~ kūngă6i-6ikb/, where the negative stem is reduplicated for the sake of penultimate stress.
with \((a + i > e, a + u > o)\) or assimilation to \((a + li > eli, a + lu \rightarrow olu)\) the verbal concords, even when they themselves are absent. It is in such constructions without verbal concords that the long vowel allomorphs occur, e.g. self-standing possessives, e.g. /\(\delta:\:'yâml, \delta:\:'yâml/ (mine), and independent positive present tense copulative constructions with true adjective stems, e.g. /\(\delta:\:'dâb+/ (tall ones), but the vowel length tends to disappear, certainly with trisyllabic stems, e.g. /\(\delta:\:'ândânh, \delta:\:'ândânh/ (the induna's), /\(\delta:\'âdâlh/ (old ones). The tonal upstep between the relative prefix and a subsequent high toneme also tends to disappear, e.g. /\(\delta:\'siyf\:'dônyêb+ ~ \delta:\'siyf\:'dônyêb+/ (we who see it).

Relative verbal constructions use subject concords which are independent morphologically (/\(\delta:\a/\) is \(/a + 6a/\) not \(/a + 6e/\) but dependent tonomorphologically in that in the positive present tense they have a low toneme without object concord and a high toneme with object concord, e.g. /\(\delta:\'zîblâlá+yêb+/\) (they who write), /\(\delta:\'zîblâlá+yêb+/\) (they who write them), and in the negative present tense a high toneme, e.g. /\(\delta:\'zîngâxi\:'bál+/\) (they who do not write them). The relative suffix /\(\delta:\'yô/\) is necessary only in the positive present imperfect tense with penultimate length, where its effect is to transfer verbs of tone class I to tone class II. Otherwise it is used optionally in certain tenses, where its effect is simply to convert verb stems from disyllabic to trisyllabic, or not at all.

Relative constructions with verbal bases conjugate through dependent tenses of the indicative and potential moods, e.g. /\(\delta:\'siyf\:'lêthôb+/\) (they who bring it, tone class I)

/\(\delta:\'siyf\:'kôthôb+/\) (they who choose it, tone class II)

/\(\delta:\'siyf\:'bôthôb+/\) (they who write it - tonal displacement)

/\(\delta:\'lêngâyî\:'léthêi+/\) (they who do not bring it)

/\(\delta:\'lêngâyî\:'kôthêi+/\) (they who do not choose it)

/\(\delta:\'lêngâzî\:'bôl+/\) (they who do not count them - tonal displacement)

/\(\delta:\'yî\:'lêthê + \delta:\'yîlêthôb+/\) (they who brought it)

/\(\delta:\'lêngâyî\:'thâ+nêl+/\) (they who did not bring it)

/\(\delta:\'yîkho\:'thîl+/\) (they who have chosen it)

/\(\delta:\'lêngâyî\:'kôthêh+/\) (they who can choose it - potential mood).

Relative copulative constructions use subject concords which are independent morphologically (/\(\delta:\a/\) is \(/a + 6a/\) not \(/a + 6e/\) but dependent tonomorphologically in that they have a high toneme throughout (but no vowel length), e.g. /\(\delta:\'sîlâphâ/\) (we who are here),

\(^1\) Its use is more frequent in Zululand than in Natal.
cf. /sllapha/ (indep.) and /ceil'lapha/ (dep.). Self-standing possessives are relative constructions without corresponding copulative constructions, e.g. /s:iyam/, /si'wam/ (mine), /sazam/ (ours), /si'ayakhe/, /si'vakh/, /si'zhek/ (his), /syam'ndan/ (the induna's), /swen'kou/ (the chief's).

Relative constructions with nominal bases conjugate through indicative tenses of imperfect aspect only, e.g. /si:singamadda/ (we who are men)

/adj/6angemadda/ (they who are not men)

/singamihandabant/ (they who have a son)

/singamihandabant/ (we who have no son)

/sa:singihembo/ (who were with them)

/sa:singihetha/ (they who were with us)

/sangemihetha/ (they who are not with us)

/sizembe singhena/ (we who will be there).

The addition of the relative vowel to copulative constructions based on adjective stems gives rise to the forms generally regarded as "adjectives". Here the prefix toneme for true adjectives in the independent positive present tense where no verbal prefixes are used (except for the 1st and 2nd persons), is neither low as in

/6a-mUde/ (he is getting tall) and /6a-muhle/ (she is getting pretty) nor high as in /mUde/ (he is tall) and /muhle/ (she is pretty), but either high or low according to tonal dissimilation, e.g. /umuntU 6a-muhle/ (a tall person) and /umuntU 6a-muhle/ (a nice person). With disyllabic stem adjectives there are alternative forms in which the prefix toneme is always high, e.g. /6a-muhle/ (a tall person) and /6a-muhle/ (they are old), but these forms are less common. When the prefix toneme is low by tonal dissimilation, it is subject to tonal assimilation to the high toneme of the relative vowel, e.g. /6a-muhle/ (old, class 2), cf. /6a-muhle/ (old, class 10).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Noun Adjectives</th>
<th>True Adjectives</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6nyama/ (I who am black)</td>
<td>/6a-6ndala/ (I who am old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6nyama/ (black ones)</td>
<td>/6a-6dala/ (old ones)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6ndala/ (blunt)</td>
<td>/6a-6ndala/ (old)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6nle/ (heavy)</td>
<td>/6a-6nl/ (two)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6nh/ (sharp)</td>
<td>/6a-6nh/ (five)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>/6a-6ndala/ (not black)</td>
<td>/6a-6ndala/ (not old)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
In section 3.4. I wrote "Morphotonology accounts for the tonemic representation of tonal morphemes, that is for their realization as allomorphs. --- Phonologically conditioned morphotonemic variation is relevant to tonology, but not morphologically conditioned variation. Only the former type of alternation is therefore described in this section, the description of the latter type being deferred to the section on tonal morphology". There I described the morphotonological rules of tonal assimilation, tonal dissimilation, and tonal displacement. Here I describe the morphotonological rules whose reasons are not tonologically apparent. These rules give

---

1 It is apparently on analogy with /hľa, šľ, šह/ (good, bad, new) that /dň, mę, nyę/ (tall, four, one) have a final high tone in negative constructions: zível < žzível > šţível > š"žng̱žńžvéľ/.  

11 The agentive prefix is used predicatively only: /yhĎb > ŠĎb/.  

true adjectives (1st person) true adjectives (3rd person)

/š"žng̱žńžněľ/(not heavy) /š"žng̱žńžmblľ/(not two)
/šľ广州łę/:,(we who are white)/šľőľľ":,(we who are great)
/šľfэšľə,:,(we who were white) /šľfэšľə,:,(we who were great)
/šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were white) /šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were black)
/šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were not black) /šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were not black)

true adjectives (class 9) true adjectives (class 10)

/šłb/(tall, long) /š"žndb/(tall, long)
/šľęndę/(not tall) /š"žng̱žńžndę/(not tall)
/šłntşę/(new, young) /šrlntşę/(new, young)
/šľęntşę/(not new) /š"žng̱žńžntşę/(not new)
/ššyrlntşę/(which was new) /šžssrlntşę/(which were new)

5.4. Morphotonology

5.4. Morphotonology

In section 3.4. I wrote "Morphotonology accounts for the tonemic representation of tonal morphemes, that is for their realization as allomorphs. --- Phonologically conditioned morphotonemic variation is relevant to tonology, but not morphologically conditioned variation. Only the former type of alternation is therefore described in this section, the description of the latter type being deferred to the section on tonal morphology". There I described the morphotonological rules of tonal assimilation, tonal dissimilation, and tonal displacement. Here I describe the morphotonological rules whose reasons are not tonologically apparent. These rules give

---

1 It is apparently on analogy with /hľa, šľ, šह/ (good, bad, new) that /dň, mę, nyę/ (tall, four, one) have a final high tone in negative constructions: zível < žzível > šţível > š"žng̱žńžvéľ/.  

11 The agentive prefix is used predicatively only: /yhĎb > ŠĎb/.  

true adjectives (1st person) true adjectives (3rd person)

/š"žng̱žńžněľ/(not heavy) /š"žng̱žńžmblľ/(not two)
/šľ广州łę/:,(we who are white)/šľőľľ":,(we who are great)
/šľfэšľə,:,(we who were white) /šľfэšľə,:,(we who were great)
/šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were white) /šślęf̃ęgment̃/(they who were great)
/šľfэв:šľf녀̄agement̃/(they who were black) /šślęf̃ęgment̃/(they who were small)
/šślęf̃ęgment̃/(they who were not black) /šślęf̃ęgment̃/(they who were not black)

true adjectives (class 9) true adjectives (class 10)

/šłb/(tall, long) /š"žndb/(tall, long)
/šľęndę/(not tall) /š"žng̱žńžndę/(not tall)
/šłntşę/(new, young) /šrlntşę/(new, young)
/šľęntşę/(not new) /š"žng̱žńžntşę/(not new)
/ššyrlntşę/(which was new) /šžssrlntşę/(which were new)
rise to morphologically conditioned allomorphs.

5.4.1. The \(\text{HH}^{+}\) FTW

The allomorphs of the FTW depend upon the previous toneme,
\[\text{HH}^{+} \sim \text{HL} \sim \text{LL} \sim \text{LH}^{+}\].

The allomorphs \(\text{LL} \sim \text{HL}\) depend upon the previous toneme,
\[\text{HL} \sim \text{LL}^{+}\].

The allomorphs of the FTW depend upon the previous toneme,
\[\text{HH}^{+} \sim \text{HL} \sim \text{LL} \sim \text{LH}^{+}\].

The allomorph \(\text{HL}^{+}\) is due to tonal displacement with monosyllabic

prefix nouns and monosyllabic stem verbs,
\[\text{HL} \sim \text{HH}^{+}\].

The allomorph \(\text{LH}^{+}\) is conditioned by a depressor in the antepenultimate
tone syllable; it is used predominantly by male speakers,
\[\text{LH}^{+} \sim \text{HH}^{+}\].

The allomorph \(\text{HH}^{+}\) is conditioned by penultimate length,
\[\text{HH}^{+} \sim \text{LL}^{+}\].

The allomorph \(\text{LL}^{+}\) is conditioned by penultimate length,
\[\text{LL}^{+} \sim \text{HH}^{+}\].

5.4.2. Penultimate length

Penultimate length operates as a conditioning factor with the
\(\text{HH}^{+}\) FTW (see above), and with the allomorphs
of FTW's \(\text{LL}^{+}\) and \(\text{HL}^{+}\): \(\text{HH}^{+} \sim \text{HL}^{+}\).

The allomorphs of FTW's \(\text{LL}^{+}\) and \(\text{HL}^{+}\):
\[\text{HH}^{+} \sim \text{HL}^{+}\].

It also conditions the \(\text{H} \sim \text{HL}^{+}\) allomorph of FTW C of verbs with
object concords in certain tenses with inherent toneme infixes,
\[\text{HL}^{+} \sim \text{HH}^{+}\].

Nevertheless, phonologically conditioned changes are morphologically conditioned to the extent of the morphological limitations to the operation of these processes. Tonal assimilation is morphologically conditioned to the extent that it does not occur in certain instances, and tonal dissimilation to the extent that it occurs in certain instances only. Tonal displacement does not take place across word boundaries or onto word final syllables (although it sometimes does so in quick speech with words in close syntactical relationship), but here the word is the limit and the word is, perhaps, a phonological unit marked by primary stress as well as a morphological unit.
5.4.3. Depressor consonants

Depressors operate as a conditioning factor with the $\text{HHO}$ FTM (see above), and with the tonal displacement allomorphs of FTM's $\text{LH}$ and $\text{LH}: $ /$\text{HH} \gg \text{HH}$ and /$\text{HL} > \text{HL} \sim \text{HL}$.  

\begin{itemize}
  \item e.g. /$\text{isikh} \gg \text{isikh} \sim \text{isikh}$ / (chairs)
  \item /$\text{isikh} \gg \text{isikh} \sim \text{isikh}$ / (times)
  \item /$\text{isikh} \gg \text{isikh} \sim \text{isikh}$ / (they plowed it, them).
\end{itemize}

However, tonal displacement operates according to phonological rules, and it is consequently dealt with elsewhere (5.4.3.). Note, nevertheless, that in the determination of FTM BA allomorphs, the subject concord conditions an antepenultimate high tone except on depressor syllables,

\begin{itemize}
  \item e.g. /$\text{isikh} \gg \text{isikh}$ / (we did not plow),
  \item cf. /$\text{isikh} \gg \text{isikh}$ / (we did not wash).
\end{itemize}

5.4.4. The tonal upstep as a conditioning factor

Initial high tones tend to be replaced by low tones if followed by a tonal upstep,

\begin{itemize}
  \item e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (small boys)
  \item e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (they have plowed it, them)
  \item cf. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (they have seen it, them)
  \item e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (we should choose for him, them)
  \item cf. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (we should bring for him, them).
\end{itemize}

This tendency is not apparent with noninitial high tones,

\begin{itemize}
  \item e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (they have already plowed it)
  \item /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (let us choose for him)
  \item /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (minute little feathers).
\end{itemize}

In careful speech the initial high tones are retained,

\begin{itemize}
  \item e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (the people have plowed it)
  \item /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (that we should choose for him).
\end{itemize}

The initial high tone of the relative vowel asserts itself even in quick speech, even to the extent of annihilating the tonal upstep, e.g. /$\text{thla} > \text{thla} \sim \text{thla}$ / (we who see it), which is a reflection of its important function in syntax.

5.4.5. Object concords as a conditioning factor

(a) The object concord conditions the HL allomorph of FTM $\text{LL}$ of verbs of tone class II in the following forms:
(i) pos. infin. (i) with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b)(i) below,

e.g. буулима, буулима, кыулима, cf. буула, буулы.
The infinitive verb is also a class 15 noun, hence the short forms /буулы/, /кыулы/.

(ii) indep. pos. indic. pres. imperf. (III 2b), nonfinal form,

e.g. буулыма, буулыма, cf. буула, буулы.
The L+ allomorph of МТМ B is used; the object concord does not condition the L ~ L'H allomorph here: /буулыма/
not */буулыма/.

(iii) indep. pos. indic. pres. imperf. (III 2b), final form, with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b)(iii) below,

e.g. буулыма, буулыма, cf. буула, буулы.
The L+ allomorph of МТМ B is used; the object concord does not condition the L ~ L'H allomorph here: /буулыма/
not */буулыма/.
Thus neither /ы/ nor the object concord bears a high tone except by tonal assimilation to or tonal displacement from the previous syllable, e.g. /быйулыма/, /буюулыма/.

(iv) indep./dep., pos./neg., indic. pres. fut. (III 2c), with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b)(iv) below,

e.g. буулыма, буулыма, буулыма, буулыма, буулыма, буулыма,

of. буула, буула,

The object concord conditions the L ~ L'H allomorph of МТМ B (i.e. an antepenultimate high tone except on itself) of verbs of tone class II with FTМ [LH] in the following forms:

(i) pos. infin. (i) with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a)(i) above,

e.g. буулыма, буулыма, буулыма, буулыма,

The short form /буулыма/ shows that the antepenultimate high tone in /буулыма/ represents the LH ITМ allomorph, and the short form /кыулыма/ shows that the antepenultimate high tone in /кыулыма/ represents the LH МТМ allomorph after the LH ITМ allomorph, both of which are conditioned by the object concord. In /буюулыма/, LH-LH-LL > LH"LLL.
(ii) indep.pos.indic.pres.perf. (III 2a), final form,
e.g. siy-ilil+ba, siy-ilil+lb+, cf. all-ilil+, all-ilil+i

(iii) indep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), final form,
with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a) (iii) above,
e.g. siy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+i

(iv) indep./dep., pos./neg., indic.pres.fut. (III 2c), with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a) (iv) above,
e.g. si-zhy-ilil+isa+, hsi-zhy-ilil+isa+, sing-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. si-zhy-ilil+, hsi-zhy-ilil+, sing-zhy-ilil+

(c) The object concord conditions the H ~ L\textsuperscript{H} allomorph of MTM B (i.e. an antepenultimate high tone on itself) of verbs of tone class II with FTM [11] in the pos.subj.pres. (IV 2), with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (d) below,
e.g. si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+, all-ilil+, all-ilil+, (see 5.4.7.d.), which is the only occasion on which it does so\textsuperscript{ii}.

(d) The object concord conditions the L ~ L\textsuperscript{H} allomorph of MTM HA (i.e. an antepenultimate high tone except on depressor syllables) of verbs of tone class II with FTM [HH] in the pos.subj.pres. (IV 2), with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (c) above,
e.g. si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+, all-ilil+, all-ilil+, (see 5.4.7.e.), which is the only occasion on which it does so\textsuperscript{ii}.

(e) The object concord conditions the H allomorph of ITM [11] of verbs in the following forms:-

(i) dep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b),
e.g. si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+ (tone class II)
si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+ (tone class I, (a) form).
si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+ (tone class I, (b) form).

(ii) pos.subj.past (IV 1),
e.g. si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+ (tone class I)
si-y-ilil+isa+, si-zhy-ilil+isa+, cf. all-ilil+ (tone class II)

\textsuperscript{1} The stem /limisa/ normally needs an object. The stem /sijima/ (run) is intransitive: /sijima+/ and /sijima+/.\textsuperscript{ii}

\textsuperscript{ii} The object concord otherwise conditions the L ~ L\textsuperscript{H} allomorph of MTM B.
(iii) pos. subj. pres. (IV 2), with polysyllabic stem verbs only, e.g. siz166nlse, cf. r166nlse (tone class I) siz1lime, cf. r1lirm (tone class II)

(f) The object concord conditions the H allomorph of ITM $\{\text{H}\}$ of verbs of tone class I in the following forms, where verbs of tone class II use ITM $\{\text{H}\}$:

(i) indep. neg. indic. past (III 1), e.g. has1y16bn1ng, cf. has16bn1ng, cf. has1r1n1ng.

(ii) indep. neg. indic. pres. perf. (III 2a), e.g. has1y16bn1l1+1, cf. has16bn1l1+, cf. has1r1l1+.

(iii) indep. neg. indic. pres. imperf. (III 2b), e.g. has1y16bn1n, has16bn1n, cf. has1r1n, cf. has1r1n.

(iv) dep. pos. indic. pres. perf. (III 2a), e.g. si1y16bn1n1n1+1, cf. si16bn1n, cf. si1r1n, cf. si1r1n.

(g) The object concord conditions the H allomorph of ITM $\{\text{H}\}$ of verbs of tone class II in the following forms, where verbs of tone class I use ITM $\{\text{H}\}$:

(i) indep. pos. indic. pres. perf. (III 2a), final form, 3rd person, e.g. 6al1r1l1m1l1+1, cf. 6al1m1l1+1, cf. 6al1r1l1m1l1+, 6al1m1l1l1+ (1st person).

(ii) indep. pos. indic. pres. imperf. (III 2b), final form, 3rd person, e.g. 6ay1r1l1m1l1+, cf. 6ay1l1m1l1+, cf. 6ay1r1l1m1l1+, 6ay1l1m1l1+ (1st person).

(iii) pos. subj. pres. (IV 2), with disyllabic stem verbs only, e.g. si1r1y1l1m1, siz1r1l1m1-siz1r1l1m1+, cf. siz1r1m1, cf. siz1r1m1.

(h) The object concord conditions the LH allomorph of the full form pos. infin. ITM's, e.g. 6uk1y16bn1n, cf. 6uk16bn1n (tone class I) 6uk1y1l1m1, cf. 6uk1r1m1 (tone class II) 6uk1y1r1l1m1, cf. 6uk1r1l1m1 (tone class II) The short form ITM's are not subject to morphotonemic change, e.g. 6uk1l1m1, 6uk1l1m1, cf. 6uk1l1m1, 6uk1l1m1.

(i) The object concord together with penultimate length conditions the $H \sim H^+$ allomorph of MTM C of verbs in certain tenses
with inherent toneme infixes,

*eg.* /singayi'6bni+/ (we not seeing it)
cf. /singayi'6bni/ (without penultimate length)
*eg.* /singayl1a'leli+/ (we not listening to it)
cf. /singalaleli+/ (without object concord).

5.4.6. Third person subject concords as a conditioning factor

(a) The third person subject concord conditions the HL allomorph of FTM 1*LL1 of verbs of tone class II in the indep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), nonfinal form,
*eg.* 6alima, 6allmisa, cf. slliffia, slllmlsa.
The L allomorph of MTM B is used; the subject concord does not condition the H ~L+H allomorph here:
/6allmisa/ not */68,limlsa/, cf. 5.4.5.(a.ii) above.

(b) The third person subject concord conditions the H ~L+H allomorph of MTM B of verbs of tone class II with FTM 1*LL1, in the following forms:

(i) indep.pos.indic.pres.perf. (III 2a), final form,
*eg.* 6allmlle+, 6allmisa+, cf. sllmlle+, slllmlsa+

(ii) indep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), final form,
*eg.* 6ayallma+, 6ayallmib+, cf. slyallma+, slyallmib+

5.4.7. Subject concords as a conditioning factor

(a) The subject concord conditions the HL allomorph of FTM 1*LL1 of verbs of tone class II in the following forms:

(i) dep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b) (i) below,
*eg.* sllima, sly'ilima, cf. slylma, slyllima (independent).

(ii) pos./neg.subj.past (IV 1), with disyllabic stem verbs only, of. (b) (ii) below,
*eg.* sllima, sly'ilima (pos.), slylima (neg.) vsylima (neg.(c) form).

(iii) pos./neg. pot.pres. (V 1), with disyllabic stem verbs only, of. (b) (iii) below,
*e.g.* slyllima, slyy'ilima (pos., tonal displacement)
singalima, singalime (pos., t.d. blocked)
singalima (neg.), cf. singalimib+ (neg.(c) form).

The stem /limisa/ normally needs an object; the stem /gilima/ (run) is intransitive.
(b) The subject concord conditions the $H \sim 1^*H$ allomorph of MTM $B$ (i.e. an antepenultimate high tone) of verbs of tone class $II$ with FTM $\frac{H_LH}{}$ in the following forms:-

(i) dep.pos.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a)(i) above,
   e.g. all'imisâ, sâyî'limisa+wâlinisâ,
   cf. all'imisâ, sîyîlimisâ, âll'misâ (independent).

(ii) pos./neg.subj.past (IV 1), (a) form, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a)(ii) above and (c)(i) below,
   e.g. all'imisâ, sâyî'limisâ+râgêzisâ, (pos.)
   sângâlîmisâ (neg.), âsâlîmisâ (neg.(c) form).

(iii) pos./neg.pot.pres. (V 1), (a) form, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (a)(iii) above and (c)(ii) below,
   e.g. sîngâlîmisâ, sîngî'limisâ (pos., tonal displacement)
   sîngâ'gêzisâ, sîngâ'gêzisâ (pos., t.d. blocked)
   sîngâlîmisâ (neg.), cf. sîngâlîmis+b (neg.(c) form).

(c) The subject concord conditions the $H \sim L^*H$ allomorph of MTM $B$ (i.e. an antepenultimate high tone except on depressor syllables) of verbs of tone class $II$ with FTM $\frac{HIH}{}$ in the following forms:-

(i) pos./neg.subj.past (IV 1), (b) form, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b)(ii) above,
   e.g. âsîlî'misâ, sâgêzisâ, sâyî'gêzisâ (pos.)
   sângâ'îlîmisâ, sângâ'gêzisâ, âsâ'gêzisâ (neg.)

(ii) pos./neg.pot.pres. (V 1), (b) form, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (b)(iii) above,
   e.g. sîngâlî'misâ, sîngâ'gêzisâ, sîngâ'gêzisâ (pos.)
   sîngâ'îlî'misâ, sîngâ'gêzisâ, cf. sîngâ'gêzis+b (neg.)

(iii) indep.neg.indic.past (III 1),
   e.g. âsî'îlî'mângâ ~ âsîlî'mângâ, âsî'gêzângâ,
   cf. âsîlî'mângâ, âsî'yîlî'mângâ (tone class I)

(iv) indep.neg.indic.pres.imperf. (III 2b), with polysyllabic stem verbs only,
   e.g. âsî'îlî'mîsl ~ âsîlî'mîsl, âsî'gêzîsl,
   cf. âsîlî'mîsl, âsî'yîlî'mîsl (tone class I)

---

The Zululand dialect uses MTM $B$ in the dep.neg. as well as in the indep.neg.
   e.g. /sîngâlî'mângâ/ (Zululand)/sîngâlî'mângâ/(Natal)
   /sîngâ'gêzângâ, sîngâ'gêzângâ/ (both dialects)
Note relating to (i) and (ii): The evidence suggests that these tenses are changing from FTM [LL] to FTM [HL].

Note relating to (iii) and (iv): The evidence suggests that these tenses have changed from FTM [LL] to FTM [HL].

(d) The subject concord conditions the HL allomorph of FTM [LH] of verbs of tone class II in the pos.subj.pres. (IV 2), without object concord, with disyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (e) below, e.g. allímá, sigálá, cf. sítí'yllámá, sítí'sigálá (see 5.4.5.c.)

(e) The subject concord conditions the H ~ L'H allomorph of MTM B of verbs of tone class II with FTM [LH] in the pos.subj.pres. (IV 2), without object concord, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, cf. (d) above, e.g. allímá, sigálá, cf. sítí'yllámá, sítí'sigálá (see 5.4.5.d.)

(f) The subject concord conditions the H ~ L'H allomorph of MTM B of verbs of tone class I with FTM [LH] with MTM [B], and conjugational contrast disappears. It maintains with object concords, depending upon the nature of the antepenultimate syllable, e.g. sítí'lí'míšé, sítí'lí'míšé+ (nondepressor) cf. sítí'ylí'míšé ~ sítí'ylí'míšé (depressor)

(g) The subject concord conditions the H ~ L'H allomorph of MTM B of verbs of tone class I with FTM [LL] in the indep.pos.indic. pres.perf. (III 2a), final form, with polysyllabic stem verbs only, e.g. száléélímb+ (we have run away), 6áélí'mélímb+ (they) aláélthélímb+ (we have brought for one another) cf. sigáljízmílb+ (we have run), 6agáljízmílb+ (they) alkhátálímb+ (we have chosen for one another)

The only occasion on which verbs of tone class I use FTM [LL] with MTM B, but conjugational contrast maintains. It disappears with object concords, e.g. /sítí'lí'mílb+/, sítí'ylí'mílb+/ 6áélí'mélímb+/.

1 Note tonal displacement: */6agáljízmílb+ > 6agáljízmílb+/.
5.4.8. Implication prefixes as a conditioning factor

(a) The progressive implication prefix /sa/ (still)

This prefix is used in the indicative present tense, all aspects, positive and negative, and in compound tenses incorporating it. It has the same effects as the object concord (see 5.4.5.), except in the future aspect where it occurs before the morphemes /zo/ and /yo/, /zu/ and /yu/, and so has no effect on subsequent tonal morphemes. In the Zululand dialect it occurs as /sá/, and in the Natal dialect it occurs as /sá/ except in the imperfect aspect nonfinal form without object concord. As /sá/ it constitutes a tonal upstep and so gives rise to the situation for a morphophonemic change from high to low on initial syllables (see 5.4.4., "the tonal upstep as a conditioning factor"), which I show in the following examples. The references are to section 5.4.5., "object concords as a conditioning factor".

(i) indep. pos. III 2b, nonfinal form (see (a)(ii)),
    e.g.살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림
    cf. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림
    cf. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림 (Zululand).
    e.g. 살문, 살문, 살문, 살문, 살문, (t.cl.I).

(ii) indep. pos. III 2b, final form (see (a)(iii)),
    e.g. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림
    cf. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림
    cf. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림 (Zululand).
    e.g. 살문, 살문, 살문, 살문, 살문, (t.cl.I).

    The final-nonfinal distinction is lost tonally except with poly-
    syllabic stem verbs of tone class II (/limsa/ ~ limsa/), be-
    cause of the effects of /sa/, and phonally because /sa/ and /ya/
    are mutually exclusive. The Natal dialect, however, shows a
    final-nonfinal H-L distinction on the progressive infix without
    object concord,
    e.g. /살문 ~ 살문/ , cf. /살문/.

(iii) dep. pos. III 2b (see (a)(i)),
    e.g. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림
    cf. 살림, 살림, 살림, 살림 (tone class II);
    e.g. 살문, 살문, 살문 (tone class I, (a) form)
    살문, 살문 ~ 살문 (b form)

    The independent-dependent distinction is lost tonally to a
    great extent, because of the effects of /sa/.
(iv) indep.pos. III 2a, final form (see (b)(ii),
  e.g. aša"lámilí+ (we are still hungry), cf. sálámilí+ (t. cl. II),
  e.g. bá"sálámilí+ (they are still gone), cf. bášálámilí+ (t. cl. I).

(v) future aspect (III 2b) (see (a)(iv) and (b)(iv),
  e.g. sálélélí+ m, asábyilí+ m, así"sábyilí+ m, 
sí"sábyilí+ m, sálélélí+ m, asábyilí+ m, así"sábyilí+ m. 

(vi) indep.neg. III 2b (see (f)(iii),
  e.g. haš"ašíłí+ m, hai"sábyí+ m (we do not still see it),
  cf. hašíłí+ m, haiyíší+ m (tone class I).
  e.g. haš"ašílí+ m, hai"sábyí+ m (we do not still blow it),
  cf. hašílí+ m, haiyíší+ m (tone class II).

(vii) dep.neg. III 2b (see (i),
  e.g. singásášílí+ ~singášáší+ m, singásábyí+ m.
  cf. singáší+ ~singáší+ m, singábyí+ m.

In copulative constructions /sa/ occurs as /sá/ in the positive 
and as /sá/ in the negative, with the following effects,

(i) indep.pos.
  e.g. síšaśílíná, sášílíná; sísənáhá+66, sásənáháthí.,
  cf. síšaśílíná, sášílíná, síšaśílíná, sásənáháthí.

(ii) dep. pos.
  e.g. síšaśílíná, sásənáhá+66, sásənáháthí.,
  cf. sásənáhá+66, sásənáháthí.

(iii) indep. neg.
  e.g. hašaší+66, hašasəkhh, hašasəhá+66, hašasənáháthí.,

(iv) dep.neg.
  e.g. singásáší+66, ságasəkhh, singásənáhá+66, ságasənáháthí.,
  cf. ságasəkhh, ságasəkhh, ságasənáhá+66, ságasənáháthí+.

(Meaning: we/they are (not) still present, 
we/they are (not) still with them/us).

(b) The inceptive implication prefix ]ka[ (not yet)

This prefix is used in the indicative present tense, imperfect 
and future aspects only, negative only, and in compound tenses in-
corporating it. It occurs as /ká/, with the same effects as /sá/. 

(i) neg. future aspect III 2c (see (v) above),
  e.g. haš"ášílímá, haš"ášíbyí+ m.
(ii) indep.neg. III 2b (see (vi) above),
e.g. hāf"kā'6ōni, hāf"kāy'i'6ōni (we do not yet see it).

(iii) dep.neg. III 2b (see (vii) above),
e.g. singhākā'6ōni, singhākāy'i'6ōni.

This prefix does not occur in copulative constructions, but it occurs in copula verb constructions,

(i) indep.neg.
e.g. a6a'ka6i-khonM cv 'Ma 1 ka61-6ikhb+i rv 'hba"ka'6ikhb+.

(ii) dep.neg.
e.g. 6eng8ka6i-khbn+a~ 6engaka61-6ikhb+i~ 6engaka 6ikhO+.

(Meaning: they are not yet present).

(c) The exclusive implication prefix ~se~ (now, then, already)

This prefix is used in all positive tenses of the indicative and potential moods. In the Zululand dialect it occurs as /sē/ in independent tenses and as /sēh/ in dependent tenses, and in the Natal dialect it occurs as /sē/ in independent tenses, the former with and the latter without penultimate length ii, and as /sēh/ in dependent tenses. This prefix seems to have slight stress, and tonal assimilation often does not operate subsequently to it. Its high tone is often affected by a subsequent tonal upstep (see 5.4.4., "the tonal upstep as a conditioning factor"), which I show in the following examples. The allomorph /sē/ occurs where the subject concord consists of a vowel only, and conditions a long vowel in the Zululand dialect, e.g. /sēwum~(usu~usu) (2nd p.sg.), /sēye~(use~use)/ (3rd p.sg.). The general rule is to incorporate the prefix into both independent and dependent tenses, but with some speakers, predominantly in Zululand, it causes the substitution of dependent patterns regardless of syntactical function iii. Otherwise it has no morphotonemic effects.

(i) indep.pos. III 2b, final form,
e.g. alyālām+ > sELYālām+ (we are now plowing)
6āyš'6ōnāh+ > sēn"bēyš'6ōnāh+ (we are now seeing)

These forms function as emphatic final forms.

---

i The negative stem of the copula verb /6ā/ is reduplicated for the sake of penultimate stress.

ii There is a certain amount of free variation, however.

iii The subject concord is dependent as to phonal allomorph in both usages, but in the latter it is dependent both phonally and tonally.
(ii) indep.pos. III 2b, nonfinal form,
e.g. sili1sa > (sesili1sa ~ sesili1ma) ~ sesi'lima
    siyi'lima > (sesiyi'lima ~ sesiyi'lima) ~ sesiyi'lima
    6é6óna > (sé6é6óna > sé6é6óna) ~ sé6é6óna
    6eyi6óna > (sé6eyi6óna ~ sé6eyi6óna) ~ sé6eyi6óna
    sili1ma > (sesili1ma ~ sesili1ma) ~ sesili1ma

These forms function either finally or nonfinally. Of the bracket alternatives, the former is the Natal nonfinal form and the latter the Natal final form, and also the Zululand form. The final alternative occurs predominantly in Zululand; in Natal it is generally regarded as a dependent tense (see (iii) below).

(iii) dep.pos. III 2b,
e.g. sili1ma > sli1lima, siyi'lima > sesiyi'lima,
    6é6óna > s6é66n1na, 6eyi6óna > s6êyi66on1na,
    sili1ma > s66li1ma.

(iv) indep.pos. III 2a, final form,
e.g. sili1na1le+ > s6ili1nile+ ~ s6ili1nile+ (s6esi1ilmile+)
    6é66nile+ > 66é66nile+ ~ 66é66nile+ (s6eyi6onile+)
    s6eyi6onile+ > s66eyi6onile+ ~ s66eyi6onile+ (s6eyi6onile+)
    6ayi66na > 6ayi66na > 6ayi66na > 6ayi66na.

The final alternative occurs predominantly in Zululand; in Natal it is generally regarded as a dependent tense (see (v) below).

(v) dep.pos. III 2a, final form,
e.g. sili1nile+ > s6ili1nile+, s6si1ilmile+
    66b6nile+ > 66b6nile+, s66ey6nile+

(vi) indic.past (III 1),
e.g. s6ayi66n1na > s6ayi66n1na (we then saw it).

(vii) pot.pres. (V 1),
e.g. s6ingyi66n1na > s6ingyi66n1na (we can now see it).

In copulative constructions /se/ conditions dependent subject concords, both phonally and tonally, with the following effects,

(i) indep./dep.present tense
    s6"66nikkóna, s6"66nikkóna, s6"s66nikkóna, s6"66nikkóna.
    (Meaning: we/they are now present,
    we/they are not with them/us).
(ii) recent past compound tense: 6esesi:khona (we were then present).

(iii) remote past compound tense: s~:sesi;khona (we were then present).

Note that /hus:i:khona/ is ambiguous: either "he is now present" (exclusive) or "he is still present" (progressive). The three indicative mood implication prefixes are mutually exclusive.

(d) The politeness implication prefix /ma/

This prefix is used in the present tense of the subjunctive mood, and occurs as /ha-ma/. It has no morphotonic effects.

e.g. /sì6Oné > māsì6Oné, māsì6Oné+ (let us see, see it) /síng6Oní > māsíng6Oní, māsíng6Oní+ (let us not see, see it) /66"yillm6 > hā6"yillm6/ (let them plow it).

(e) The obligation implication prefix /6o;~

This prefix is used in the present tense of the subjunctive mood, and occurs as /66-o~/. Its effect is the substitution of the basic infinitive pattern.

e.g. /sì6Oné > sì66y6:6On, sì66y6:6On+ (we ought to see, see it) /síng6Oní > sìng6Oní, sìng6Oní+ (we ought not to see, see it) /66"yillm6 > hā6"yillm6/ (they ought to plow it).

The two subjunctive mood implication prefixes can combine,

e.g. /māsì66y6:jì6On+ (let us rather run).

(f) The future intention implication prefixes /zo:/ and /y6:~

These prefixes are used in all moods and in all tenses, and they can combine with all implication prefixes. They reduce subsequent morphemes to the basic infinitive pattern.

e.g. /hāsì6y6:jì6On > hāsì6y6:jì6On/ (to go and run) /hāy6:yllm6 > hāy6:yllm6/ (they are going to plow) /sì6by6:yllm6 > sì6by6:jì6On/ (we shall go to plow) /hāy6:yllm6 > hāy6:jì6On/ (they are not coming to plow) /hāsì6y6:jì6On > hāsì6y6:jì6On/ (we shall not come to plow) /sì66y6:jì6On > sì66y6:jì6On/ (we went to work) /māsì66y6:jì6On > māsì6y6:jì6On+ (let us come and see it).

5.4.9. Other conditioning factors

(a) The future aspect infixes /zh/ and /yh/ condition high tones on object concords,

1 These are practical limitations which I do not intend to enumerate.
e.g. /asîshyî'îmâh/ (we shall not plow it), cf. /asîshâlëmâ/.  
/asîshyî'îmâh/ (we shall not shut them), cf. /asîshënhâ/.  
/asîshyî'îmâh/ (I shall not write them), cf. /asîshënhâ/,  
cf. /asîshënhâlëmâh, /asîshënhâlëmâh/ (mêkâ ~ shi ~ shi).

The male voice is apt to omit the object concord high toneme in such a context of depressor syllables.

(b) The dependent negative infix /ngë/ conditions a high toneme on the conjunctive extra prefix in copulative constructions,

e.g. /sîngënhângâné/, cf. /asînhângâné/ (we have no child).  
/sîngënhângâné/, cf. /asînhângâné/ (we do not have it).  
cf. /sîngënhângâné/ (we do not still have it).

The negative infix occurs as /ngë/ when it is adjacent to the nominal base; only the progressive implication infix can intervene.

(c) The negative allomorph /khë/ of the adverb /khënhë/ conditions a high toneme on the previous syllable,

e.g. /asîkhë/, cf. /asînhënhë/ (we are not there - indep.)  
/sîngënhë/, cf. /sîngënhë/ (we are not there - dep.)  
cf. /asîsënhëkhë, /sîngësënhëkhë/ (we are no longer there).

5.5. Tonal syntax

Letele classifies syntactical relationships in Southern Suthu into upstep relations and downstep relations, but tonal steps serve to mark tonal morphemes in Zulu, as the covert tonal steps between high tonemes most significantly show: convert downsteps mark only FTM's and covert upsteps mark only ITM's and WTM's. The boundaries between words are tonologically reflected in no way differently from the boundaries between tonal morphemes:

\[ H + H \ (ITM) > H^2H \ (covert step), \text{ e.g. } /sâ:i'bënhâ 'in'sizwâ/ \ (we saw a young man), \]
\[ \text{Final elision: } LH \ (overt upstep), \text{ e.g. } /sâ:i'bënhâ 'in'sizwâ/. \]

\[ L + H \ (ITM) > LH \ (overt upstep), \text{ e.g. } /sâ:i'bënhâ 'in'sizwâ/ \ (we see a young man), \]
\[ \text{Final elision: } H^2H \ (covert upstep), \text{ e.g. } /sâ:i'bënhâ 'in'sizwâ/. \]

\[ H + H \ (FTM) > H^2H \ (covert downstep), \text{ e.g. } /sîngënhë 'nësizwâ/(we seeing no young man). \]

\[ H + L \ (FTM) > HL \ (overt downstep), \text{ e.g. } /sîngënhë 'nësizwâ/(we seeing no man). \]

cf. /in'sizwâh/ (covert upstep within word)  
/in'sizwâ/ (covert downstep within word)
Similarly tonal assimilation operates between words as well as within words. Even the presence of penultimate length is no bar to
its operation, as with final vowel elision,
e.g. /síkoná á”máodb+/ (we see men - subj.)
      /síkoná ámáodb+ ~ síkoná á”máodb+/ (we see men - indic.)
      /siyáwákoná á”máodb+/ (we do see the men).

Tonal assimilation and final vowel elision reflect the close transition between words in Zulu. In quick speech, as a consequence of close
transition, tonal displacement sometimes takes place across word
boundaries,
e.g. /6áthéng' inqólh+ > 6áthéng' inqólh+/ (they buy a wagon),
and sometimes onto final syllables,
e.g. /hálalí nowádi+ hálalí nowádi+/ (we write no letter),
cf. /háfit'hálí inowádi+/ (we do not write the letter).

Syntactical relationships in Zulu are shown by the presence or
absence of penultimate length, the marker of phrases, together with
the morphotonemic changes that it conditions,
e.g. /síínkáél+ ~ sííthéng' ínkáél+/ (we bought oxen),
      /ísínkhói zá:phómá+ ~ ínkáel zá:phómá+/ (the oxen went out),
      /símpýélóngáél+ ~ símpýélóngáél+/ we not having seen it).

Nevertheless the reversal of the rules of final tonal assimilation in
constructions of the closest syntactical relationship (see 3.4.1.) is
grammatically significant in reflecting a syntax unit smaller than the
phrase and larger than the word,
e.g. /tíína-tháthu/ (we people, we Africans), not */tíína-tháthu/,
      /halóní-gáwá ~ halóní-gáwá/ (we see no warrior),
      /sínpýélóní-náóó / we seeing no man), not */síngélóní-náóó/,
      /íkúngáél-náóó/ (not to be a man), not */íkúngáél-náóó/,
      /ýélá-ňháándáí/ (be strong), /ýélá-ýhínkósí/ (be a chief).

Here the role of tone is simply to reflect a syntax unit within the
phrase; it is not the prime marker of it. As far as I know, tone plays
no greater part in syntax. The analysis of Zulu syntax, however, re-
mains a still largely unexplored field.
REFERENCES

2. Doke  The Phonetics of the Zulu Language. 1926. Ch.XIX.
7. Letele  The Role of Tone in the Southern Sotho Language. 1955.
15. Tucker  The Comparative Phonetics of the Suthu-Tswana Group of Bantu Languages. 1929.
18. Westphal  Venda Tonal Structure. (op.cit.)
19. Rycroft  Tone in Zulu Nouns. (op.cit.)
20. Lanham  Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.)
21. Lanham  Comparative Nguni Phonology. (op.cit.)
23. Letele  The Role of Tone in Southern Sotho. (op.cit.)
24. Westphal  Venda Tonal Structure. (op.cit.)
26. Richardson  The Role of Tone in Sukuma. 1959.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Author</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>33.</td>
<td>Letele</td>
<td>The Role of Tone in Southern Sotho. (op.cit.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Summary of nominal tone classes and declensions

Allomorphs of tonal morphemes, where different from the norm, are given in brackets. The "arrow" indicates the effect of tonal displacement, and the "tilde" the effect of tonal assimilation. Final tonal assimilation, which depends upon the context of syntax and tonal steps, is not shown.

Tone class and declension II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) full form nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bhåkhåhå (elders)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>A(L&gt;H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>bhåkhåhå (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>B(LH^H)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>bhåkhåhå (loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>lsiñosångå (walls)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>A(L)</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>lsiñosångå (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>B(LH&gt;LL)</td>
<td>LL(&gt;HLL+)</td>
<td>lsiñosångå (loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH(H)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>lntåmbåi (girl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH(&gt;LL)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH(&gt;HLL+)</td>
<td>lntåmbåi (girls)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH(&gt;LL)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH(&gt;HL)</td>
<td>lntåmbåi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH(&gt;LL)</td>
<td>A(L&gt;H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>lntåmbåi (dim.)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (b) extra prefix inflection |
| LH(>DL) | -  | LH(>HLH+) | nhåntåmbåi (with a girl) |
| LH(>DL) | -  | LH(>HL) | nhåntåmbåi         |
| B+LH(>LL) | - | LH(>HLL+) | nhåntåmbåi (rather than girls) |
| LH   | A(L) | HL   | ngåzåñosångå (by means of little walls) |

| (c) short form nouns |
| L   | -    | LH   | lsiñosångå (walls)  |
| L(\) | -    | LH   | ntåmbåi (girl)     |
| L+L(\) | -  | LH   | nhåntåmbåi (even a girl) |
| L+L | -    | LH   | nhåntåmbåi (even girls) |

| (d) pronouns and demonstratives | None |

| (e) adjectives and adverbs |
| (i) L | -    | LH   | håölåli (two)     |
| (ii) L(\) | -  | LH   | håövård (red)    |
| (i) L(\) | -  | LH   | nhåif (when)      |
| (ii) B | -    | LH   | phåkåhå (inside)  |
### Tone class and declension III

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

#### (a) full form nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HL(HH')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>ámá'khósí (chiefs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HH)</td>
<td>A(L-H')</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>ámákhbasána (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HH)</td>
<td>B(LH-LLH)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ámákhbasána (loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(LH)</td>
<td>falsvlá (rains)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td>A(L)</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>falsvlánlá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td>B(LH-LL)</td>
<td>LL&gt;HL+</td>
<td>falsvlánláhálí (loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(HH)</td>
<td>in'kóosi+ (chief)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>in'kóosi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H)</td>
<td>A(L-H')</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>in'kóosi+ (chief's son)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (b) extra prefix inflection

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HL(HXL)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(HL+)</td>
<td>nhánkóosi+ (with a chief)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HXL)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(HL+)</td>
<td>nhánkóosi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+HL(HH&gt;LLH)</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(HL+)</td>
<td>kúnhlám'khósí+ (rather than chiefs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td>A(L)</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>ngálsvnhdlándí (by means of little rains)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (c) short form nouns

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(LH)</td>
<td>falsvlá (rains)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L(L')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(LH)</td>
<td>nkóosi (chief)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L+L(L')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(LH)</td>
<td>nhánkóosi (even a chief)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L+L(L')</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HH(HL+)</td>
<td>nhángánkóosi+ (even through a chief)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### (d) pronouns and demonstratives

None

#### (e) adjectives and adverbs

- **(i)** L | - | HH(HL+) | 6hi'hthhí+ (three) |
- **(ii)** L | - | HH(HL+) | 6hi'hlhí+ (painful) |
- **(i)** L+L | - | HH(HL+) | 6káhlángí+ (painfully) |
- **(ii)** H' | - | HH(HL+) | ná'mníhí+ (today) |
## Tone class and declension IV

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Example</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) full form nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HH')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HH&quot;)</td>
<td>B(H)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL B(LH&gt;LL)</td>
<td>LL&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(HL+H)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H')</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL B(HL+H)</td>
<td>LL&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) extra prefix inflection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL(H+L)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+HL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+HL HH&gt;LL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+HL HH&gt;LL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) short form nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L(L&gt;Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L+L(Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L+L(Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) pronouns and demonstratives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H(L&gt;Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H(L&gt;Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L+L(Y)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H' +</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H' +</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) L+L</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) H'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'L+</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'L+</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'L+</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Tone class and declension I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) full form nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>hóá nth (people)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>hóá nth (children)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>hóá nth (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>iží ndá (affairs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Lllh)</td>
<td>LL(Hh)</td>
<td>iží ndá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Lllh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>bá i ndá (2nd)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Rh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ín yó ná (bird)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh&gt;llll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>ín yó ná (birds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Lllh)</td>
<td>LL(Hh)</td>
<td>ín yó ná</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Lllh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ín yó ná (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>índá (house)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>índá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>índá (houses)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh)</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>índá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Lllh&gt;llll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>índá (loc.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) extra prefix inflection</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh&gt;ll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>nghá yó ná (by a bird)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Hh&gt;ll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh)</td>
<td>nghá yó ná</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L^h(Hh&gt;llll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>njé ngá sí ná (like birds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) short form nouns</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Ih'L)</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>hóá ndá (house)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L^h(Ih')</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>zí ná (birds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+L^h(Ih&gt;llll)</td>
<td>LL(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>nhá zí ná (even birds)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) pronouns and demonstratives</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>gónká (all)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>gónká (absolutely all)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) adjectives and adverbs</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL(L) (f)</td>
<td>ñká (four)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ghóá thóá (blunt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L+L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>khóá thóá (bluntly)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>phéá ló (above)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ñ fó ló (long ago)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tone class and declension V

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Hl^h(Hl)</td>
<td>HH(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>ín' ñ á ngá xá (frog)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hl^h(Hl)</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>ín' ñ á ngá xá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hl^h(Hl')</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ín' ñ á ngá xá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hl</td>
<td>LL(Hh)</td>
<td>ín' á ngá xá (frogs)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hl</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ín' á ngá xá (dim.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H+Hl</td>
<td>HH(Hh&gt;Hh)</td>
<td>njé'í ngá zí á ngá xá (like frogs)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Note:

(a) Full form nouns have disyllabic (and some monosyllabic) prefixes. The ITM is either $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}L_1}$ or $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}H_1}$ according to tonal dissimilation from the FTM.

(b) The extra ITM is $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$ except where the extra prefix coincides with the initial vowel of the noun and adopts its toneme.

(c) Short form nouns have monosyllabic (and some zero) prefixes. The ITM is $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_1}$ and the extra ITM $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_2}$ for the first inflection and $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$ for subsequent inflections.

(d) Pronouns and demonstratives do not undergo declension except for /66nkəna/ and /66dwlːiːj/, which are rarities. The pronoun ITM is either $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H}$ or $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L}$ according to tonal dissimilation. There is no demonstrative ITM as demonstratives have no gender prefixes. The extra ITM is $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$, except for two instances with the absolute pronoun when it is $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L}$:

(i) /nhyaː/ (with him), cf. /nhəːl/ (with me);
(ii) /66.1 nhəːl/ (they are not with me), cf. /66.1 nhəːl/ (they are with me).

(e) Adjectives and adverbs undergo declension rather rarely. As to ITM, with adjectives it is $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_2}$ and with adverbs either $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_2}$ (adverbs with initial /ma/, /6u/, /ka/ and /ku/ elements) or $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$ (adverbs with initial /pha/, /e/, and miscellaneous elements). Adjectives have no extra ITM as they are uninflectionable by nominal extra prefixes. Adverbs have either $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_2}$ or $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$ according to the model of either short form nouns with ITM $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_2}$ or full form nouns with ITM $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}H_2}$.

(f) Monosyllabic stem nouns illustrate the partial representation of the FTM, H representing FTM $\text{\text{\text{\text{H}}}L_1}$ and L representing FTM $\text{\text{\text{\text{L}}}L_1}$. The final two tonemes constitute a pseudo-FTM. Monosyllabic demonstratives and adverbs illustrate the monotonal FTM.

(g) Polysyllabic stem nouns show a twofold FTM contrast on single extension and no FTM contrast on double extension. Although the FTM distinction is reduced, the ITM distinction is maintained; tonal ambiguity is thus prevented, but not completely. Polysyllabic stem nouns with nonderivative stems show a fourfold FTM contrast. Theoretically these nouns are to be classified into the four main tone classes, on analogy with derivative polysyllabic stem nouns, as follows:
trisyllabic quadrisyllabic

| LH - L - HL | LH - LH - LL (tone class II) |
| HL - L - HL | HL - LH - LL (tone class III) |
| HL - H - LL | HL - LH - LL (tone class IV) |
| L'H - LL | L'H - LL (tone class I) |
| HL - H - HL | (tone class V) |

And into subsidiary tone classes, to account for the four-fold FTM contrast, as follows:

| trisyllabic | quadrisyllabic |
| LH - L - LH | LH - LL - HL (tone class IIa) |
| HL - L - HH | HL - LL - HL (tone class IIIa) |
| HL - L - HL | HL - LH - LL (tone class IVa) |
| L'H - LL | L'H - LL (tone class Ia) |
| HL - H - LL | (tone class Va) |

In practice, however, the situation is by no means so complex. All nonderivative stems with FTM [LL] fall into tone class I (which is identical to tone class Ia) with FTM [L'H]. No such nouns have FTM's [HL] and [LH] or FTM's A and B. The test of the syntactical slot after /akukho/- (there are no -), where only nouns of tone class I have no high tonemes, proves the point, e.g. /akukho zlnyambezi/, cf. /lznnyambezi/ (tears)

/akukho zlnyathelo/, cf. /lznnyathelo/ (footsteps)

/akukho mabuchel/, cf. /lzmabuchel/ (lions)

cf. /akukho zinzizwana/, cf. /lznzizwana/ (small young men - tone class IV).

All nonderivative trisyllabic stem nouns with FTM [HLL] belong to either tone class III or tone class IVa (which are identical in toneme pattern), with FTM [HHL]. No such nouns have FTM [LH]. I would assign them to tone class III for the sake of economy; it is likely, furthermore, that the majority of these nouns are in fact derivations, as the suffixes suggest: /ana, aze/, /azi, aze, ezi, azi/, /ala, alo, ulu, ili, elo/, /ath, oth/. Trisyllabic stem nouns with FTM [HHL] belong to tone class IIIa, to which quadrisyllabic stem nouns with FTM [HLL] also belong. No regular derivations belong here, but there are irregular derivations, e.g. /inko'nyane~inko'nyane/ (calf), cf. /inko'nyene/ (small beast)< /inko'nd/ (beast), and sundry doubtful derivations. Tone class IIa is tenuous: the majority of nouns given in
Dokels' dictionary as /in'tu1thwane/ (ant) now fall into tone class IIIa as /in'tu1thwane~in'tu1thwane/\(^1\), the nonfinal allomorph HH~HH depending upon the presence or absence of tonal assimilation in the previous syllable.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Non-derivative polysyllabic stem nouns</th>
<th>I/(Ia)</th>
<th>III/(IVa)</th>
<th>IIIa</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Isinyathi1 (footstep)</td>
<td>Ink'nyanë (small beast)</td>
<td>Ink'nyanë (calf)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Uinyembëzi (tear)</td>
<td>D'mak'lenzi (worker)</td>
<td>D'mak'lenzi (work)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jibózëzi (lion)</td>
<td>I:thim'wâne (wild fig)</td>
<td>I:thin'gâle (wild plum)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ingönyanë (lion)</td>
<td>Î:thengëzi (potsherds)</td>
<td>Î:tho1ndële (long staff)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I:zamhëni (antbear)</td>
<td>In'tu1thwane (ant)</td>
<td>In'tu1thwane (ant)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B'khókâkhë (witch)</td>
<td>Is'má'kâne (fly)</td>
<td>Is'mó'kâle (soil)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'bhúkhe(ni) (headman)</td>
<td>Inhl'ziyeb (heart)</td>
<td>Isá'ňkâxi (old woman)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(quadrisyllabic)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(quadrisyllabic)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>V</td>
<td>IIa</td>
<td>IIIb</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U:m'vë nthëni (butterfly)</td>
<td>Ink'nyanë (swallow)</td>
<td>S'mvë nkëânë (male)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&lt; Jembëvë (wagtail)</td>
<td>L'ink'nyanë (plural)</td>
<td>~ Im'mhidänë+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jembëvë (wagtail)</td>
<td>L'ink'nyanë (plural)</td>
<td>~ Im'mhidänë+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jembëvë (wagtail)</td>
<td>L'ink'nyanë (plural)</td>
<td>~ Im'mhidänë+ (girl - polite term)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These nouns may be prefixally inflected, e.g. /ngëzinyëmbëzi/ (by means of tears) /ngöödëngëzi (by/with a potsherds) /ngöödënbële (by/with a long staff) /njëngësël'këzi (like an old woman) /yhl'ink'nyanë+ (by a calf)

These nouns undergo declension on suffixal extension, e.g. /ngëkhim'wâni/ (in a wild fig tree) /ngëthin'gâle/ (in a wild plum tree) /mgöödënsëni/ (at work) /mgöödënsëni/ (to the lion) /Jzamhëni/ (small antbear) /inhthwànyânë~inhthwànyânë/ (little ant) /izlëk'kâne/ < /izlëk'kâne/ (ford, tone class I) /izlëk'kâne/ < /izlëk'kâne/ (mirrors, tone class III)

---

\(^1\) This word also occurs as /in'tu1thwane/ (tone class III).
Summary of verbal tone classes and conjugations

Allomorphs of tonal morphemes are set out below the tonal morpheme representations. The "arrow" indicates the effect of tonal displacement, and the "tilde" the effects of tonal assimilation. Final tonal assimilation, which depends upon the context of syntax and tonal steps, is not shown. The verbs used in illustration are /dla/ (eat), /6ona, 6onisa/ (see, cause to see), /bala, balela/ (write, write to/for), /6aleka/ (run away), of tone class I, and /enza/ (do, make), /lima, limisa/ (plow, cause to plow), /vala, valela/ (shut, shut for/against), /geza, gezisa/ (wash, cause to wash), /gijima/ (run), of tone class II. Polysyllabic stem verbs do not differ whether the stems are nonderivative, e.g. /6aleka, gijima/, or derivative, e.g. /6onisa, limisa/, /balela, valela/.

The subject concords used in illustration are /si/ (we), /6a/ (they, class 2) and /zi/ (they, class 10). The object concords are /yi/ (class 9, gender 5 sg.) and /zi/ (class 10, gender 5 pl.). Implication prefixes are omitted, but note that /sA/ and /kA/ have the same morphotonemic effects as object concords (see 5.4.7.(a) and (b)), /sA ~ sA/ and /kA/ have no morphotonemic effects (see 5.4.7.(c) and (d)), and /66:/, /z6:/ and /y6:/ bring about the subsequent substitution of the positive infinitive pattern (see 5.4.7.(e) and (f)).

---

1 Disyllabic initial vowel stem verbs behave as monosyllabic stem verbs.
# INFINITIVE MOOD

## Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| HL | H (a) | uhulá
| HH' | HL (d) | akid|lwá
| HH | L ~ H | HL gúgbóníká
| + obj.c. | LH | HL (b) | kid'zídá
| LH | L | HL | kidílóñí
| LH | (L ~)H | HL | kidílóñí
| LH | L | HL | kidílóñí
| LH | (L ~)H ~ HH | HL | kidílóñí
| **Negative** | | |
| LH | LH (c) | kidíngálí
| | LH (d) | kidíngálílwá
| | L | kidíngálóñí
| L | LH (bb) | kidíngálóñí
| H | HLL+ (bb) | kidíngálóñí
| L | LH | kidíngálóñí
| H' | HLL+ | kidíngálóñíbáll
| HDL | HLL+ | kidíngálóñí
| L | LH | kidíngálóñí
| L | HLL+ | kidíngálóñí
| LH | HLL+ | kidíngálóñí
| (HH ~)HH | HLL+ | kidíngálóñí

---

1. Passive: to be eaten, not to be eaten. Passive verbs do not use the negative suffix /í/. 
### I. INFINITIVE MOOD

**Tone class and conjugation**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L (a)</td>
<td>ukwénzih</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LL (d)</td>
<td>ukwénzlwáh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>bikúlimíh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
<td>bikú'zénzh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>bikúllímíh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>(Lr-)H</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>bikú'ýí'lính</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>bikúllímísh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ locative</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LL (d)</td>
<td>ekwénzónl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>ekúllímínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>H (e)</td>
<td>LL (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH</td>
<td>(Lr-)H'</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>bikú'ýí'línl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><strong>Negative</strong></th>
<th>LH' + nga</th>
<th>LH'</th>
<th>LH'</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH (c)</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>ukúngénzí</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH (d)</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>ukúngénzlwá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúngalínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH (bb)</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'zénzí+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+ (bb)</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'zélínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'zélínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH&gt;HLH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>bikúnga'vhlínl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 Passive: to be done, not to be done. Passive verbs do not use the negative suffix /i/. 
### II. IMPERATIVE MOOD

#### Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>6bnish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL+</td>
<td>(monosyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL~HL</td>
<td>dlimnā,yidā (eat!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>yakhā (build!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL+</td>
<td>yō6nēb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>yō6nāsē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL+</td>
<td>yō6nāsē+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (f)</td>
<td>yidi (eat it!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
<td>yakhē (build it!)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural | - | HL | 6bnānl |
| - | LH | 6bnāsl |
| - | HL (d) | dbhānāl,yidānāl |
| - | HL (d) | yakhānāl (build it!) |
| + obj.c. | LL | LH | yō6nānl |
| L | HL+ | yidānāl (eat it!) |
| L | HL (d) | yakhānāl (build it!) |

#### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>limē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>limāš</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL+</td>
<td>(polyssyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH~HL</td>
<td>yīsā, wānā (fall!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>yēnā (dc!, act!)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LH+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL</td>
<td>LH+HL</td>
<td>yīlimēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>zivahē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HH</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>(polysyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HDL</td>
<td>LH+HL</td>
<td>yīlimēi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>zivahē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>zivahē</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (f)</td>
<td>(monosyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
<td>yēnā (do it!)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Plural | - | HL | limānl |
| - | LH | limānl |
| - | HL (d) | ywānāl,wānīnl |
| - | HL (d) | yēnānl (act!) |
| + obj.c. | LL | LH | yīlimēi

1. The object concord displaces its high toneme. The form /yīlimē/ occurs less commonly, but the form /yīlimē/ is the only possibility.
2. The object concord displaces its high toneme. The form */yīlimē+/* does not occur, but the form /yīvahē/+ is the only possibility.
3. The object concord displaces its high toneme.
### III. INDICATIVE MOOD: I. past tense

#### Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive (indep./dep.)</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{A}}}: )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive (indep./dep.)</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{A}}}: )</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{C}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{H}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
<td>( \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} + \text{\textit{\textbf{L}}} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

1. The old dep. pos. tense now functions as the positive past subjunctive.
2. The old indep. and dep. neg. tenses now function as alternatives of the negative past subjunctive.
III. INDICATIVE MOD: 2a. Present perfect tense

Tone class and conjugation 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indep. pos.</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>A†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>H6'H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>H6'H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final)† 1/2 p.</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>A†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>LL†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final)† 3 p.</td>
<td>H†</td>
<td>A†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H†</td>
<td>(l-)H'</td>
<td>HLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H‡</td>
<td>D H'</td>
<td>HLA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666lîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666lîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîflîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîflîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîflîlîb+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL†</td>
<td>HLA (a)</td>
<td>666nîflîlîb+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 These forms also occur nonfinally with perfect state meaning, particularly with stative verbs.
III. **INDICATIVE MOOD:** 2a. Present perfect tense

**Tone class and conjugation II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indep. pos.</th>
<th>1/2 p.</th>
<th>3 p.</th>
<th>3 p.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>LTLL</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>LTLL</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final)</td>
<td>LTLL</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>+ obj.c.</th>
<th>1/2 p.</th>
<th>3 p.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(final)</td>
<td>LTLL</td>
<td>HHHH</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These forms also occur nominally with perfect state meaning, particularly with stative verbs.
Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dep. pos.</th>
<th>JT</th>
<th>MT</th>
<th>FT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dep. pos.</th>
<th>JT</th>
<th>MT</th>
<th>FT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(L^[r])H^1</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>H[^d]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These forms occur nonfinally with perfect state meaning, when H[^d]+ > L^[r]-HH, e.g. /6ââ'kônâlâ/ (they being gone), /6âl'â'nîlâ/ (they being come).
## III. INDICATIVE MOOD: Present perfect tense

### Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep.neg.</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep.neg.</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>+</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LH¹</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. Past action in meaning, recent or remote, according to context.
2. Perfect state in meaning. There is no nonfinal allomorph.
   - a) they are not dead, they are not gone.
   - b) they are not fallen, they are not come, they are not hungry.
3. The tonal upstep is often not apparent.
III. **INDICATIVE MOOD: 2b. Present imperfect tense**

**Tone class and conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>- MTM</th>
<th>FTN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Indep. pos.</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td>([L) ()(A) ()(HL)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1/2 p. - o.c.</td>
<td>([L) ()(L)()(f)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(L) (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 p. - o.c.</td>
<td>([H) ()(A) ()(H)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(L) (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final) 1/2 p.</td>
<td>([L) ()(L)()(H)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>H (aa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final) 3 p.</td>
<td>([H) ()(L)()(H)]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>H (aa)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(H)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### III. INDICATIVE MOOD: 2b. Present imperfect tense

#### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MPM</th>
<th>FPM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep. pos.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(nonfinal)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 p. -o.c.</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3 p. -o.c.</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final) 1/2 p.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(final) 3 p.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH-HH)H</td>
<td>(LH-HH)H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
<td>LLLH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH-HH-HH)H</td>
<td>(LH-HH-HH)H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>HH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH-HH-HH)H</td>
<td>(LH-HH-HH)H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 p. -o.c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
- (monosyllabic stem)
- (nonfinal)
- (final)
- (o.c.)
III. INDICATIVE MOOD: 2b. Present imperfect tense.

**Tone class and conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dep. pos.</td>
<td>J(L)</td>
<td>J(A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(Ir)H'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH)H'H'I</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dep. pos.</td>
<td>J(L)</td>
<td>J(A)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(Ir)H'</td>
<td>HH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH)H'H'I</td>
<td>HH+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- obj.c.</td>
<td>J(H)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tone class and conjugation II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dep. pos.</td>
<td>J(L)</td>
<td>J(B)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(Ir)H'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH)H'H</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LH)H'H'LH</td>
<td>LL+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- obj.c.</td>
<td>J(H)</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: The table represents grammatical structures and morphological changes in the Indicative Mood of the verb in the present imperfect tense.*
III. INDICATIVE MOOD. 2b. Present imperfect tense.

Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep.neg.</td>
<td><code>a + </code>ll</td>
<td>`a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`l</td>
<td>`l</td>
<td>`ll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj. c.</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>`l(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`H</td>
<td>`ll</td>
<td>hasf'iym1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td><code>(H/H1) </code>l(H/H1)</td>
<td>`ll</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- obj. c.</td>
<td><code>a + </code>H</td>
<td>`H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>H+~</code>H</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>hasf'iym1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dep.neg.</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>`H+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`H+</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>hasf'iym1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep.neg.</td>
<td><code>a + </code>H</td>
<td>`B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`l</td>
<td>`l</td>
<td>`H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`H+</td>
<td>`H+</td>
<td>`H+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- obj. c.</td>
<td><code>a + </code>H</td>
<td>`H</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>H+~</code>H</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>hasf'iym1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dep.neg.</td>
<td>`H</td>
<td>`H+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`H+</td>
<td>`H+</td>
<td>`H+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The tonal upstep is often not apparent.
III. **INDICATIVE MOOD**: 2c. Present future tense

### Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indep.pos. 1/2 p.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${L} + (z-\zokh)^i$</td>
<td>${A}$</td>
<td>${H}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$H$ (a) siz(b)(k)(h)(i)(a)</td>
<td>$H$ (a) siz(b)(b)(b)(n)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL (b) siz(b)(h)()(y)(i)(i)l(h)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Dep.pos.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${H} + (z-\zokh)$</td>
<td>${A}$</td>
<td>${H}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$H$ (a) siz(b)(k)(h)(i)(a)</td>
<td>$H$ (a) siz(b)(b)(b)(n)(b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL (b) siz(b)(h)()(y)(i)(i)l(h)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Indep.pos. 1/2 p.</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>${L} + (z-\zokh)^i$</td>
<td>${B}$</td>
<td>${L}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(k)(w)(n)(z)</td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(b)(l)(i)(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 p.</td>
<td>${H} + (z-\zokh)$</td>
<td>${B}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(k)(w)(n)(z)</td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(b)(l)(i)(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HL (b) siz(b)(h)()(y)(e)(n)(z)</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj.c.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dep.pos.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>${H} + (z-\zokh)$</td>
<td>${B}$</td>
<td>${L}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(k)(w)(n)(z)</td>
<td>$L$ (a) siz(b)(b)(l)(i)(m)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>LL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

^i= Definite future morpheme $\{zo\}$ or indefinite future morpheme $\{yo\}$.

^ii= The allomorph $z\-zh\-h$ is less common except with monosyllabic stem verbs.

^iii= The special allomorph $z\-zh\-h$ is compulsory with initial vowel stem verbs without object concords.
### III. INDICATIVE MOOD: 2c. Present future tense

**Tone class and conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>MMN</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep. neg. ( a + [\text{H}] + (\text{zh} - \text{zhik}-\text{zh})^{1} )</td>
<td>( \text{HL}^{a} )</td>
<td>asizhiklá́ ́i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{HL} )</td>
<td>asizhiklá́ ́ii</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{HL (b)} )</td>
<td>asisbyílá́v</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(L, H)</td>
<td>asisbyílóná</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(L, H)</td>
<td>asisúrblóná</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>asisúrblóná</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>asisúrblóná</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dep. neg. \( [\text{H}] + (\text{ngé-}ngé) \) \( + (\text{zh}-\text{zhik}-\text{zh})^{1} \) | \( \text{HL} \) | singasízhílá́i |
| \( \text{HL (a)} \) | singasízhíláná |
| \( \text{HL (b)} \) | singasízhílánáv |
| (L, H) | singasízhílóná |
| (L, H) | singasízhílóná |
| L | singasízhílóná |
| LL | singasízhílóná |

**Tone class and conjugation II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MMN</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Indep. neg. ( a + [\text{H}] + (\text{zh} - \text{zhik}-\text{zh})^{1} )</td>
<td>( \text{HL} )</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{HL (a)} )</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( \text{HL (b)} )</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj. o.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(L, H)</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(L, H)</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LL</td>
<td>asízhíkwénsa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Dep. neg. \( [\text{H}] + (\text{ngé-}ngé) \) \( + (\text{zh}-\text{zhik}-\text{zh})^{1} \) | \( \text{HL} \) | singasízhíkwénsa |
| \( \text{HL (a)} \) | singasízhíkwénsa |
| \( \text{HL (b)} \) | singasízhíkwénsa |
| (L, H) | singasízhíkwénsa |
| (L, H) | singasízhíkwénsa |
| L | singasízhíkwénsa |
| LL | singasízhíkwénsa |

---

1. Definite future morpheme \( [\text{yu}] \) or indefinite future morpheme \( [\text{yu}] \).
   The optional allomorph \( /\text{ngé}/ \) of the negative morpheme \( [\text{ngé}] \) is conditioned by the former only.

ii Or /asízhíkwénsa-/ asízhíkwénsa/ (indep.), /singasízhíkwénsa/ (dep.).

iii Or /asízhíkwénsa-/ asízhíkwénsa/ (indep.), /singasízhíkwénsa/ (dep.).

iv Or /asízhíkwénsa-/ asízhíkwénsa/ (indep.), /singasízhíkwénsa/ (dep.).

v The allomorph \( /\text{zh}/ \) conditions a high tone object concord.

vi The special allomorph \( /\text{zhik}/ \) is compulsory with initial vowel stem verbs without object concords, e.g. /asízhíkwénsa/ (we will not act), cf. /asízhíkwénsa/ (we will not do it).

vii Or /asízhíkwénsa/ (indep.), /singasízhíkwénsa/ (dep.).
IV. **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**: 1. Past tense

**Tone class and conjugation I**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Tone class and conjugation I</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>{Ḷ̣} + a</td>
<td>{Ạ̣}</td>
<td>{HḶ̣}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shóoná, shóoná</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shóonísha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>obj. c.</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(Ḷ̣)H'</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>sá'yidilá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>sá'yidilísha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-obj. c.</td>
<td>{Ḥ̣}</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>{HḶ̣}(f) (monosyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>L (a)</td>
<td>sádíli, sádíli</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Tone class and conjugation II**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
<th>Tone class and conjugation II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>{Ḷ̣} + a</td>
<td>{Ḅ̣}</td>
<td>{LḶ̣}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shlíma, shlíma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>shlímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>shlímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj. c.</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(Ḷ̣)H'</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>sá'yénsha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>sálímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-obj. c.</td>
<td>{Ḥ̣}</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>{HḶ̣}(f) (monosyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>L (a)</td>
<td>sénñá, sénñá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td>{Ḷ̣} + a</td>
<td>{Ḅ̣}</td>
<td>{HḶ̣}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shlíma, shlíma</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H'</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shlímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>shlímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj. c.</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>sálímašá</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>+ obj. c.</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: 1. Past tense

Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative ( H I + \alpha + \text{ngå} )</td>
<td>( A I + C I )</td>
<td>( HL I )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}60\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}8\text{on}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{y}6\text{d}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{f}6\text{d}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{f}6\text{d}6\text{n}6\text{n} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H^+ )</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{f}6\text{d}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(HL~)HHI+</td>
<td>( I L I )</td>
<td>( (f) \text{(monosyllabic stem)} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H + H + \alpha )</td>
<td>( A I + C I )</td>
<td>( HL I )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{åå}6\text{d}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H^+ )</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{åå}8\text{y}6\text{f}6\text{d}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative ( H I + \alpha + \text{ngå} )</td>
<td>( B I + C I )</td>
<td>( LL I )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}8\text{on}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{y}6\text{d}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{y}6\text{n}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H^+\text{~}HHI+ )</td>
<td>LL</td>
<td>( (b) \text{stem} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H I + \alpha + \text{ngå} )</td>
<td>( B I A I + C I )</td>
<td>( HL I )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}8\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{y}6\text{d}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{sångår}y\text{y}6\text{n}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H^+\text{~}HHI+ )</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( (c) \text{stem} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H + H + \alpha )</td>
<td>( B I ~ B I A I + C I )</td>
<td>( I L I )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{åå}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( H^+ )</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>( \text{åå}8\text{y}6\text{l}6\text{n}6\text{h} )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1 The negative infix is \( /\text{ngå}6\text{ngå}6\text{ngå}/.  

11 The tonal upstep is usually apparent with MTM \( B I \) but not with MTM \( B I A I \).
IV. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD: 2. Present tense

Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>HTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}_{\overline{H}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{BDL}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH} \rightarrow \overline{HL}$</td>
<td>siyidné</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{BDL}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH} \rightarrow \overline{HL}$</td>
<td>siyidné</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
<td>siyidlé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{LB}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LB}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>siyidlé</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

+ obj. o. |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>HTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Positive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}_{\overline{H}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}_{\overline{H}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH} \rightarrow \overline{HL}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH} \rightarrow \overline{HL}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
<td>siyidlé</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}_{\overline{H}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>HTM</th>
<th>PTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}_{\overline{L}}$</td>
<td>$\overline{L}_{\overline{H}}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{H}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\overline{L}$</td>
<td>$\overline{LH}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. **SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD**: 2. Present tense

### Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Pattern</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>PTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td>( { H_L } )</td>
<td>( { H_L } )</td>
<td>( { L_H } )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>slineb, Glineb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
<td>sivalb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>slinebas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H-L</td>
<td>LHIL</td>
<td>sivalbals</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>Casinglab</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**+ obj. c.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Pattern</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>PTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>(bb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>(bb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>sifyelme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H-L</td>
<td>LHML</td>
<td>sillageb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H-L</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>(bb)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>sifyelme</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>sif&quot;sivalb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**-obj. c.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Pattern</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>PTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>( { L_L } )</td>
<td>(f)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>L (a)</td>
<td>senze, baneb</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**+ obj. c.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Pattern</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>PTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>H'</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HH+</td>
<td>(polysyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LU+)H'H'</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>syi&quot;li'mise ~</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>syi&quot;li'mise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HH</td>
<td>sifall'mise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HLL+</td>
<td>sifall'mise+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LU+)HL</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>sifall'ime</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>(LU+)HL</td>
<td>HLL+</td>
<td>sifall'ime+</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Negative**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tone Pattern</th>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTH</th>
<th>PTH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>( { H_L } + nge )</td>
<td>( { L_H } )</td>
<td>( { L_H } )</td>
<td>(polysyllabic stem)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>singbunzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>singbunzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>singbunzi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>(bb)</td>
<td>singbunzi+</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>singbunzi+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>H</td>
<td>LH+</td>
<td>singbunzi+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>( { C_G } )</td>
<td>( { HH_L } )</td>
<td>(polysyllabic stem)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(H-L)H'H'</td>
<td>HLL+</td>
<td>singbunzi+</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
V. POTENTIAL MOD: Present tense

Tone class and conjugation I

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[LA]</td>
<td>[A]</td>
<td>[HL]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>H+L</td>
<td>(a) singāḍālā, singāḍālā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>[A]</td>
<td>[HL]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>LH'</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tone class and conjugation II

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ITM</th>
<th>MTM</th>
<th>FTM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Positive</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[LA]</td>
<td>[A]</td>
<td>[HL]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>[A]</td>
<td>[HL]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H]</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>H</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>[H']</td>
<td>LH</td>
<td>HL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The text appears to be in a language other than English, possibly a South African language, and includes diacritical marks that are not universally recognized or supported in modern text editors. The context suggests it is a linguistic study, possibly related to the potential mood and conjugation in a specific language.
Notes on monosyllabic stem verbs

(a) Partial FTM representation, H representing FTM [HL] and L representing FTM [LL]. The final two tonemes constitute a pseudo-FTM.

(aa) The infix /ya/ bears the MTM toneme and not the first toneme of the FTM, which is borne by the final syllable. Hence partial FTM representation, e.g. /sîyâdla+, 6ayâdla+ not /sîyâyâl+a+, *6â'yâyâl+./*

(b) Full FTM representation with object concords, which bear high tonemes here. Otherwise they do not bear high tonemes except by tonal assimilation to or tonal displacement from the previous syllable.

(bb) The object concord bears the MTM toneme as well as the first toneme of the FTM, by overlap. Hence full FTM representation, with overlap, e.g. /ukûngâzenzi/+ not /ukûngâzenzi+/

(c) Full FTM representation with inherent toneme infixes by overlap. Note that the FTM [HH] final allomorph HL+ does not occur: the nonfinal allomorph LH functions both finally and nonfinally.

(d) Full FTM representation with disyllabic suffixes.

(e) The object concord conditions the H allomorph of MTM B in these cases only, i.e. it bears the high toneme that it conditions. Otherwise it conditions the L~L'H allomorph.

(f) Here monosyllabic stem verbs have different tonal morphemes from disyllabic stem verbs.

(g) Stative verbs with special disyllabic perfect stems behave as monosyllabic stem verbs. There are several examples in tone class I, e.g. /la:le < lala/ (lie down), /phe:te < phe:tha/ (carry), /thwe:le < thwala/ (carry), but only one example in tone class II, /hlâli < hlæzi < hlala/ (sit down). In the Zululand dialect this verb belongs to tone class I, and even in the standard dialect there are alternative forms of the perfect stem. These stative verbs partially follow the pattern of the imperfect aspect, which provides a final-nonfinal distinction. In this respect they behave exceptionally, in a way which stative verbs with special trisyllabic stems (e.g. /khâthele < khâthula/) do not follow.
indep. pos.
I  a1læl-+ (we are lying down, asleep)
   61læl ( = imperf.) ~ 62'læl+
II (a1hlæll ( = I) ~ a1hlæll) ~ a1hlæll+ (or less commonly as I, a1hlæll+ (we are sitting down, seated).
   (61hlæll ( = imperf. I/II) ~ 61hlæll) ~ 61hlæll+ (or less commonly as I, b1hlæll+ (they are seated).

dep. pos.
I  61hlæl ~ 61hlæl+
II (61hlæll ( = imperf.) ~ b1'hlælf) ~ 61'hlæll+ (or rarely as I, 61hlælf ~ 61hlæll+).

indep. neg. (no nonfinal forms)
I  b1hlæl+ (they are not lying down)
II b1'hlælf+ (they are not sitting down)

dep. neg. (no nonfinal forms)
I & II 6ngâlælæ+, 6ngâhlælf+

Compare /kathela <khathala/ (get tired):

indep. pos.  a1kâthælæ, 6a1kâthælæ (final or nonfinal)
dep. pos.  6a1kâthælæ ~ 6a1kâthælæ+

neg.  b1b1kâthælæ+, 6engâkâthælæ+ (no nonfinal forms).